

Please
handle this volume
with care.

The University of Connecticut
Libraries, Storrs

720.6

Ea7

3141, E.s. no.

42

C.2

BOOK 820.6.EA7 no.42 c.2
EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY # E
XTRA SERIES



3 9153 00229692 1







PR
2065
.66
Z69
1857
pt.

The Romance of

15
26

Guy of Warwick.

EDITED FROM THE AUCHINLECK MS. IN THE
ADVOCATES' LIBRARY, EDINBURGH, AND FROM MS. 107
IN CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

BY

JULIUS ZUPITZA, PH.D..

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN, HONORARY MEMBER OF THE
CAMBRIDGE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIII.

~~7226~~
607
ex. acc.
no.
~~7226~~

Extra Series.

XLII.

H. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, LONDON.

TEMPORARY NOTICE.

For information about the two parallel Texts printed here (the one for the first, the other for the second time*), I beg to refer the reader to the Preface to my Edition of the Romance of Guy of Warwick, from the Paper MS. Ff. 2, 38, in the University Library, Cambridge (E. E. T. S., Extra Series xxv and xxvi, for 1875 and 1876), pp. v and vi. My warmest thanks are due to Dr. James A. H. Murray, who, having collated Turnbull's Edition with the Auchinleck MS. before me, was to be my co-editor throughout, but, on account of his Dictionary work, was obliged to withdraw after the first sheets were printed off. His collation, however, which he was so good as to send me, has been, and will continue to be, of great use to me. I must also add that the side-notes in this first Part are nearly all his.

I take this opportunity to repeat that I should be greatly obliged for any information as to the whereabouts of a complete copy of Copland's *Guy* (the British Museum one having lost its first twenty leaves), as well as of Cawood's *Guy*, and of a fragment 'printed in a thinner letter than W. de Worde's' (cf. Warton, ed. Hazlitt, II. 162).

J. Z.

Berlin, S. W., Kleinbecrenstr. 7 :

Febr. 21, 1885.

* Cf. The Romances of Sir Guy of Warwick and Rembrun his Son. Now first edited from the Auchinleck MS. Edinburgh : printed for the Abbotsford Club. MDCCCXL. [The Editor was William B. D. D. Turnbull.]

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
Boston Library Consortium Member Libraries

Here ginneþ Sir Gij.

(AUCHINLECK MS. 107^v.)

Gij of Martiike.

[The first leaf is wanting in the Auchinleck MS., and the story is here supplied from the French version, MS. Corpus Coll., Camb., leaf 6, collated with MS. Harleian 3775, leaf 15.]

	P	uis cel tens ke deus fu nez e establi crestienetez,	
¹ multes, <i>Harl.</i>		¹ multz des ¹ auentures sont auenues,	
² Qui ³ omit.		ke ² a tuz hommes ne sont pas ³ sues.	
		pur ceo deit l'em mult enquere,	5
		e pener sei de bien fere,	
⁴ — ⁴ aprendre bons		e de ⁴ bons prendre ⁴ esperimentz,	
		de faitz, de diz as aunciens	
		qui deuant nus esteient.	
		auentures beles lur aueneient,	10
		pur ceo qu'il amoient uerite,	
		tut dis fei e leaute.	
		De eus deit l'um bien souenir	
		e lur bons faitz dire e oir :	
		qui mult out e ceo retient	15
		souent mult sage deuient ;	
⁵ — ⁵ il ceo tent ben.		⁵ ceo est tenu ⁵ a bele mestrie,	
		ki fait le sen e lest la folie.	
		De un counte uoloms parler	20
⁶ faceit		qui mult fait ⁶ a preiser,	
		e de un son senescal	
⁷ estelt		qui pruz ert ⁷ e leal ;	
		e de son fiz, un damoisel	
		qui mult par ert gent e bel ;	25
		e com il amat une pucele,	

SYTH THE TYME þAT CRYST IHESU,
Thorough hys grace & vertu,
Was in þis world bore
Of a mayd withowt hore,
And þe world crystendom
Among mankynd first becom,

5

adventures,

10 unknown as yet.

Therefore schulde man with gladde chere

15

are worth knowing.

And y it holde a fayre mastrye,

20

I will tell of an
Earl, .

And of hys stewarde, withoute lesynge,

and his steward,

And of the stewarde soñe, a fayre yonge thyng,

and how the
steward's son

That gentil was and fayre bee-seen,

25

And how he loued a mayden sheen,

loved the Earl's
daughter,

la fylle au counte, ke mult ert bele.

C. 25. En engleterre un coens esteit,
 en Warewik la cite maneit :

¹ pouer	riches ert e de grant Foer ¹ , queintes, sages, bon cheualer ;	40
² chastels	riches ert de or e de argent, de Dras, de seie, de vesselement, de fortz chasteul ² , de riche citez ;	
³ n'	par tut le rengne ert mult dotez. n'i ³ aueit homme en tote la terre	45
⁴ osat	qz i uers li osaht ⁴ prendre guerre,	
⁵ toht	ke par force toht ⁵ nel preist,	
⁶ sa	e en la ⁶ chartre nel meist. bons cheualers mult ama,	
	riches douns souent lur dona ;	50
	pur ceo fu cremu e dote, e par tut le rengne preise.	
	coens esteit de mult grant pris, sires ert de tuit le pais ;	
	de oxeneford tut le honur	55
	sue estoit a icel iour ;	
⁷ omit.	de bukingham de ⁷ tut le counte	
⁸ cel	sire en tel ⁸ tens esteit clame.	

C. 51. li coens roaud out a nun,
mult par esteit noble barun. 60
⁹ out de vne fylle auoit⁹ sa mulier,
sa grant beaute ne puis conter :

The Erles doughter, that was so bryghte,		
And how he spoused that swete wyghte,		married her,
And how that he reynbroun beegate—		
AH y kanne telh yow that—	30	
And how he wente into wildernesse :	[p. 2]	and went on his wanderings.
AH y kanne telh yow as it ys.		
A wyseman it vnto vs seyde		
That it wrote and in ryme it leyde.		
I wol it not any longer conceed,	35	
But open the sentence as ye may fele.		
I N ENGLONDE an Erle was wonnyng		The Earl owned Warwick,
In Warrewyke Citee, ryght as I fynde :		
Ryche he was and grete of myght,		
Erle he was, and a full stronge knyght,	40	
Riche of gold and of syluer bothe,		and was very rich
Of clothes of gold and vesseh, withoute othe,		
Of stronge castellis and riche Citees :		and powerful.
Thorough all Englund preised he was.		
In all Englund ne was ther none	45	
That durste in wrath ayenste hym goon.		
Good knyghtis he loued y-wys,		
And freely he gaue them of hys,		
Therefore welbelouyd he was,		
And grettly doubted in euery place.	50	
Erle he was of grete price :		
AH that contree tho was hys ;		He was lord of Oxford
Of oxenford and all that contrey		
He was gouernoure at that day ;		
Of Bokyngham, and of all that shyre,	55	and of Bucking-ham.
He was klepyd both lord and syre.		
That Erle Rohaude hyght,		He was called Rohaud.
Baroun he was of grete myght.		
A doughter he had of hys wyue,		He had a daughter
Hyr grete beaute y can not dyscryue :	60	
For the fairest men chesen hir y-wys.	[p. 3]	who was very beautiful,
That y you telle, sothe it is.		

pur la plus bele le unt choisie.
 ore est reisun ke l'em uus die
¹ *omit.* vn petitet de sa grant¹ beaute : 65
 le viz out blank e colore,
² *treitis* lunge, traitet², e auenaunt ;
 bele buche, e nes bien seaunt,
 les euz uairs e le chief bloi ;
 de li ueer uus semblast poi : 70
 bien faite de cors, de bele estature,
 tant *par* ad duce la reguardure.

³ *endoctinees* corteise ert e enseignee,
 de tuz artz ert enseignee³ : 80

ses mestres esteient venuz
⁴ *toulette* ⁵ *touz* de tulette⁴, tut⁵ blaunks chanuz,

⁶ *arsmetrike* qui la apernoient de astrenomie,
 de arsmetic⁶, de Geumetrie.

mult par ert fere de corage :
 pur ceo ke ele fud tant sage,
 C. 71. ducs e countes la requeroient ; 95
 de ⁷multz de ⁷terres pur li⁸ venoient,
⁷⁻⁷ *mute ; read* ⁸ *multes* mes nul de eus amer ne uoleit,
⁸ *luy* pur ceo ke tant bele esteit.

Of hir' beaute yet a litell wighte :
 With a faire visage louely in sighte,
 Hir skynne was white of brighte coloure ; 65
 Bodied wele and of grete valour ;
 Large tresses, and wele bee-comyng',
 Browes bente and nose weH sittynge ;
 The mouthe so wele sittynge ywys,
 To kisse it ofte it was grete blys ; 70
 With grey eyen and nekke white,
 Hir to see it was grete delite.
 Hir bodye weH sette and shaply ; handsome,
 By thoo daies ther' was noon suche truely.
 Gentil she was and as demure 75
 As girfauk, or fawkon to lure,
 That oute of muwe were drawe ;
 So faire was noon, in sothe sawe.
 She was therto curteys and free ywys, and accomplished.
 And in the .vii. artes weH lerned, withoute mys. 80
 AH the .vii. artis she kouthe weH,
 Noon better that euere man herde tell.
 Hir maisters were thider come
 Oute of Tholouse aH and some ;
 White and hoore aH they were, 85
 Bisy they were that mayden to lere ;
 And they hir lerned of astronomye,
 Of Ars-meotrik, and of geometrye.
 Of Sophestrie she was also witty,
 Of Rethoric, and of other clergie ; 90
 Lerned she was in musyke ; [p. 4]
 Of clergie was hir noon like.
 She was a woman of grete corage,
 Wise and faire and of gaye parage.
 To haue hir to wif he did hir sende 95
 Erles, Dukes, fro the worldes ende ;
 And noon of them haue she wolde,
 For that she was so faire holde.

She had famous
 teachers from
 Toulouse [*French*
text Toledo],

who taught her
 all the seven arts.

Dukes and earls
 wooed her in
 vain.

- felice fu la bele appellee :
 pur sa beaute fu mult amee ; 100
 de totes beautez fu ele la flur,
 tant bele ne ert a icel iour.
 ki totes terres dunc serchast
^{1 ne} vne tant bele n'i¹ trouast :
 qui tote sa beaute countereit 105
 trop grant demorance i freit.
- C. 83.** de la pucele lerrum ester,
^{2—2 del} ^{2e de²} senescal uodrum parler,
^{3 Qi} ke³ mult ert corteis e sage :
 homme fu de mult grant parage ; 110
^{4 omit.} riches ert e de mult⁴ grant ualur ;
 en icel tens ni out meillur,
^{5—5 Ni qi} ^{5ne} ke⁵ fuht tant des armes prise,
 kar en mainte terre aueit este
 pur sun pris enhaucier ; 115
^{6—6 feseit} pur ceo ⁶fait il⁶ mult a loer.
 en Walingeford nez estoit,
 tuit le pais a li apendoit :
 pur ceo fud il nobles e fier ;
^{7 n'} tant bon n'i⁷ aueit de ca⁸ la mier, 120
^{8 sa (= ça)} ne ki seruist sun seingnur,
 tuz iours a si grant honur.
- AUCHINLECK MS.** His lord he serued treweliche
^{108r, col. 1.} **C. 93.** In al þing manschipeliche.
 þer was non erl in Inglond 125
 þat to ȝeines him durst stond,
 Bot, ȝif he wold be wiþ him at on,
 He wald do nimen him anon,
 & wiþ strengþe him nim wolde,
 þei he to Scotland suwe him scholde. 130
 His lordis honour he held worþschipliche,
 & defended it wele & hardiliche ;
^{1 MS. was} þer nas¹ kni[3]t in Inglande
 þat wiþ wretþe durst him atstonde.

Felice .la bele hir name is :

Moche she was belouid ywis ;

Of aȝ faire she was the floure,

Nooȝ so faire in halle nor boure

As she was ; who that souȝhte

So faire to fynde, for nouȝhte he wrouȝhte :

He that aȝ hir beaute write wolde,

To longe taryng make he sholde.

NOWE WE shuȝ leue of hir here,
And telle you forthe of our matiere.

Speke we schuȝ of the Stywarde :

Weȝ true he was, and highȝte Sywarde.

This Syward was slighe and wise,

Riche of kynde, and of grete prise :

In his tyme nooȝ better was,

For of grete worship was noonȝ in his caas.

Of armes he had beenȝ chief on grounde,

And therof preised in many a londe ;

For that he wolde preysed bee,

He did him bee knowenȝ in many a contree.

In Walyngforde he was borne.

Aȝ that Contree to him was sworne.

A swiche noble manȝ he was,

On this half the see noon suche was,

That serued his lorde so truely,

And in aȝ thinges so worshipfully.

Ther was noon Erle in aȝ that londe

That his lorde durste withstonde,

Bot he with loue it amended anoȝne,

Hastely he¹ wolde vpon him gooȝne,

And with strengthe hym haue wolde,

Though he therfor in to Scotlonde sholde.

Aȝ his lordes londe weȝ and truely

He maynteyned it full worshipfully ;

That nooȝ was so hardy a maȝ,

That with wronge durste coȝme thanȝ.

Her name was
Felice la Belle.

100

None so fair.

105

The Earl's
Steward,
Syward by name,

110

was a man of
great valour,

115

a native of
Wallingford.

120

[p. 5]

This steward
served his lord
faithfully ; no
earl in England
durst withstand
him.

125

¹ MS. we.

He defended his
lord's honour,

130

against every
knight.

þei a man bar an hundred pounde,
 Opon him, of gold y-grounde,
 þe[r] nas man in al þis londe
 þat durst him do schame no schonde, 140
 þat bireft him worþ of a slo,
 So gode pais þer was þo.

C. 110.
 Turnb. p. 2, l. 19.

þilke steward hadde a sone
 Trewe & wise atte frome ;
 Al folk he dede him loue, 145
 For þat noman schuld him schoue ;
 & riche ȝiftes ȝiuen he wold,
 For þat he schuld be fre yhold.
 þerl Rohaud he serued þo,
 As he schuld his kinde lorde do ; 150
 þerl him loued swiþe dere,
 Ouer al oþer þat þer were.
 Of his coupe serue he him dede,
 He was preysed to him in euerich stede :
 þerl michel him worþschipede, 155
 & for his fader loue to him clepede.

C. 123.

Gij of Warwike his name was,
 In court non better beloued þer nas,
 So he was among gret lordinges,
 Litel & michel in al þinges. 160
 Gentil he was & of michel miȝt,
 Ouer al oþer feirest bi siȝt¹ :
 Al þai wonderd strongliche,
 For his feirhed was so miche ;
 So mani godenes in him were, 165
 Al him preysed þer y-fere,
 Of bordis & turnament y-wis,
 Kniȝtes to hauen & holden of þris.

MS. 108r. col. 2.
C. 139.
 Turnb. p. 3, l. 42.

Gij a forster fader hadde,
 þat him lerd & him radde 170

- Fastenned he had suche a pees, 135
 That neuere sithe noon better was :
 Though men did bere an hundred pounde,
 Vpon him, of penyes rounde,
 There shulde not bee founde in aH the londe
 A theef that him wolde hurte ne shonde, 140
 Nor take fro him the worthe of a sloo :
 So good pees there was thoo.
 That same Stywarde had a soñe
 Wise and curteys at Frome ;
 AH men him did loue sothely, 145
 Ther was noon that him wolde shonye.
 To AH men yiftes yiue he wolde,
 Therefore so curteis he was holde.
 The Erle Rohaud he serued thoo,
 His kynde Lorde, so mote y goo. 150
 The Erle him loued hertly and dere, [p. 6]
 Ouer aH other that with him were.
 Of his coupe he him serue Didde,
 And priuyest with him in euery stede :
 The Erle Rohaud mikel him worshipped, 155
 And for his fader loue thoo farther him cleped.
 Guye of Warrewik his name was,
 In aH the courte nōon more honoured nas :
 Of knyghtes and of grete lordinges,
 Of more and lasse, in aH thinges. 160
 MikeH he was, and of grete mighte,
 And fairest of all other be sighte :
 AH him behelde wondirly,
 His fairenesse was so grete truly ;
 So many goodnesses in him were : 165
 AH him preised that were there.

A man loaded
with gold was
safe from all
attack,

owing to the good
peace he enforced.

This steward had
a son, true and
wise,

beloved by all.

He served Earl
Rohaud, and was
his cup-bearer.

His name was
Guy of Warwicke.

He was gentle
and strong,

beautiful and
good.

Guye a foster fader hadde,
 That him lerned and also redde

170 Guy was taught

Of wodes & riuer & oþer game :
 Herhaud of Ardern was his name.
 He was hende & wele y-tauzt,
 Gij to lern forȝat he nauzt ;
 Michel he coupe of hauk & hounde, 175
 Of estriche faucouns of gret mounde.

C. 143. It was opou a Pentecost day yteld, 185
 þerl a gret fest held
 At Warwike in þat cite,
 þat þan was y-won to be.
 þider cam men of miche miȝt,
 Erls & barouns boþe apliȝt, 190
 Leuedis & maidens of gret mounde,
 þat in þe lond wer y-founde.
 Eueriche maiden ches hir loue
 Of kniȝtes þat wer þider y-come,
 & euerich kniȝt his leman 195
 Of þat gentil maiden wiman ;
 When þai were fro chirche y-come,
 þer aliȝt mani a noble gome.
 þerl to þe mete was sett,
 Gij stode foru him in þat flett, 200
 þat was þe steward sone,
 þerl to serue it was his wone.
 Turnb. p. 4, l. 71. To him he cleped Gij,
 & him hete & comandi
 þat he in to chaumber went, 205
 & grete wele þat maiden gent,

Of wode, of Ryuer, of aH game :

Heraude of Arderne was his name.

Sir Herhaud of
Ardern.

He was curteys, and weH taughte,

Guye he lerned and forgate him naughte ;

MikeH he kouthe of haukes and houndes,

175

Of Ostours, of Faukoñs of grete-moundes.

AH that wolde of him oughite craue,

With good wille they shulde it haue.

To parsoñs and to pouer knyghtes

Ofte he wolde yiue riche yiftes ;

180

And to other ofte yiue he wolde

Palfrey or stede, siluer and golde,

Euery man after his good dede

[p. 7]

Of Guye vnderfangeth his mede.

ON WITSONDAYE called Pentecoste

185 On Pentecost day
the Earl held a
great feast,

The Erle helde a grete feste

In Warrewik, that good Citee,

As it euer was wonte to bee.

There were Erles, baroñs, and knyghtes,

And many a mañ of grete myghtes ;

190

to which came
earls and barons,

Ladies and maydeñs of grete renown,

and ladies of
renown.

The grettest desired ther' to bee bowñ.

Many a mayde there chese hir loue anone

Of knyghtes that thider were come,

Every maiden
chose her love,

And the knyghtes also their' femans there

195

and every knight
his leman.

Of the maidens that there were.

Whan they fro chirche were come,

In to the halle they yode full sone.

Whan the Erle to the mete sette was,

Guye stode before him in that plaas,

200

Guy stood before
the Earl to serve,

He that was Sywardes soñe,

To whom the Erle grete loue had nome.

The Erle cleped to him Guye,

To him gan sey and commaunded on highe,

That he in to the chambre wente

205

and was sent to
serve the Earl's
daughter.

And grete weH his doughter that was so gente ;

& þat he schuld þat ich day
Serue wele þat feir may.

C. 159. **G**ij him answerd freliche :
'Sir, ichil wel bleþeliche.' 210

In a kirtel of silk he gan him schrede,
Into chaumber wel sone he ȝede.
þe kirtel bicom him swiþe wel,
To Amenden þer on was neuer a del ;
þe maidens biheld him feir & wel, 215
For þat he was so gentil.

C. 161. Gij on his knes sone him sett,
& on hir fader half he hir grett,
& seyð he was þider sent
To serue hir to hir talent. 220

MS. 108v. col. 1.

C. 162. Felice answerd þan to Gij
'Bieus amis, molt gramerci.'
& seþþe sche asked him in þe plas
Whennes he cam, & what he was.
'Mi fader,' he seyð, 'hat Suward, 225
þat is þi fader steward,
þat wiþ him me haþ y-held
& forþ y-brouȝt, God him for-ȝeld !'

Turnb. p. 5, l. 97.

'Artow,' sche seyð, 'Suward sone,
þat of al godenes haþ þe wone ?' 230
Gij stode stille & seyð nouȝt.

Wip þat was the water forþ brouȝt :
þai sett hem to mete anon,
Erl, baroun, sweyn & grom.
¶ Gij was bisy þat ich day 235

To serue wele þat feir may.
þat day Gij dede his miȝt
To serue þritti maidens briȝt ;
Al an-amourd on him þai were,
& loued Gij for his feir chere. 240
þer of no ȝaf he riȝt nouȝt,
Al anoþer it was his þouȝt :

And that he schulde at mete that Daie
 Bee willyng^t to serue that faire mayē.
 'Sir,' seide Guy full freely,
 'I doo youre heste full blithely.' 210
 With a silken kirtel began him shrede,
 And in to the Chambre than he yede.
 The kirtel so well sitting^t it was, [p. 8]
 It to amende noo nede it has;
 Guy was so well shape and gentille, 215
 The maidens him behelde with good wille.
 On knees before Felice he him sette,
 And on^t hir fader behalue he hir grette,
 And seide how he was thider sentte
 To serue hir to hir talentte. 220
 Felice answerd ayene to Guye,
 'Beaux amye, moult gramercye.'
 And than she asked him in that place
 Where that he bornē was.
 And Guye seide, 'my fader is called Sywarde, 225
 That is youre faders Stywarde;
 Many a daye he hath me with him holde,
 And forthe me bredde, god him foryelde!'
 'Bee ye,' she seide, 'Sywardes soñe,
 That all goodnesse hath in wone?' 230
 Guye stode stille and spake noughte.
 With that the water was forth broughte :
 She did wesshe and wente to mete anone
 And so did knyght, squier, and grome.
 All his mighte he did that daie
 To serue well that faire maye. 235
 Wele to serue he did his myghte
 Moo than thirty maidens brighte;
 That all they anamoured were
 On Guye for his faire chere. 240
 And he therof rekked noughte,
 For vpon another was his thoughte :

Guy arrayed him
blithely,

and repaired to
Felice,

who asked who
his father was.

He answered
'Syward, thy
father's steward.'

She praised
Syward.

Guy acquitted
himself so well

that thirty
maidens fell in
love with him.

On Felice þat was so briȝt,
 Gij hir loued wiþ al his miȝt;
 So michel sche was in his þouȝt, 245
 þat neye he was to deþ y-brouȝt,
 He gan to wepe & sore siche,
 & biment him wel reweliche;

& grete wonder he hadde y-wis 251
 þat Felice so feir a creatour is.
 Ac he no dar his loue keþe,
 No sen hir wel vnneþe,
 He is in so gret þouȝt, 255
 His *conseyl* wil he schewe nouȝt.

C. 187.
 Turnb. p. 6, l. 123.

Into þe maidens chaumber he is y-go,
 At Felice he tok his leue þo,
 & in his way he goþ apliȝt.
 Vnto his chamber he went ful riȝt, 260
 & wepe & made grete wo,
 For he loued þat maiden so.
 His men axed him on hy,
 Whi þat he was so sori?

MS. 108v. col. 2.

He hem answerd sone anon, 265
 þat swiche iuel is comen him on
 þat he wenep his liif forgon,
 Bote no tit him neuer non.

C. 207. In þe court biment was Gij;
 Mani man for him was sori, 270
 For he was won to serue hem wel,
 & ȝif hem mani a iuwel.
 Now is Gij in gret tempest,
 Sorwe he makeþ wiþ þe mest
 Of Felice þat feir may; 275
 For hir loue he sorweþ ay.

On Felice with the nebbe so brighte [p. 9] But he cared only
 He kaste his loue with all his mighte ; for Felice,
 That he ne wiste what to doo, 245 whom he loved to
 Hir loue werked him suche woo. death.
 He wepte with mayne slilye,
 And mourned in hym self softelye,
 That he euere shulde see
 Hir brighte rodye, hir faire blee. 250
 Moche wonder he hath ywis,
 That she so faire a creatur' is.
 He durste not to hir his loue kithe, But he dared not
 to confess his
 thoughts.

Bot to his chambre wente right swithe :
 Withoute any leue takyng of Felice thoo,
 Oute of his chambre he did goo. 260

Than asked of him his meyne,
 Why that he so heuy wolde bee.
 Guye answerd theim anone, 265
 Seying that sikennesse is come him vpon,
 Wherthurgh his lif he weneth to forgoe,
 And neuere helth to haue of his woo.

IN THE COURTE mikel bemened is Guy :
 For him was many a man' sory ; 270
 For he was wonned to serue them wele,
 And to them yiue many a ieowele.

Nowe is Guy in grete tempeste,
 Sorowe he maketh with the moste ;
 For loue that he had to the maye 275
 His sorowe encrested nyghte and daie.
 Nowe is Guye so euyH bee stadde,
 Hym self he helde for a man' madde.

& grete wonder he hap y-wis
 þat him so hard bifallen is ; 280
 He acursed þe time þat [he] hir say,
 Felice wiþ hir eyzen gray,
 Hir gray eyzen, hir nebbis schene :
 ‘ For hir mi liif is miche *in* wene.
 Turnb. v. 7. l. 149. To hir ichil tellen al mi þouzt, 285
 Whi þat icham in sorwe brouzt.
 Tide me gode oþer qued,
 Y nil it hele for no nede,
 Riht to hir that y ne go
 & schewe hir of mi miche wo. 290

¶ Ac now to hir schewen y nille ;
 Allas, wreche, hou may i duelle ? 295

For mi lordes douhter sche is,
 & ich his nori, forsoþe y-wis ;
 þerfore ich auzt him treweþe bere,
 & neuer more him to dere. 300
 3if ich hir loued, & it wist he,
 & he miht ouer-take me,
 He wald anon mine heued of smite,
 Oþer heye hong, for that wite,
 Oþer hewe me wiþ swerdes kene, 305
 3if ich hadde don him þat tene.
 Allas, wreche, what may y do ?
 Y loue þing y no may com to !’
 C. 191. ¶ Now is Gij in sorwe ybrouzt ;
 Of his liif nis him nouzt. 310

He went and trent his hed opon,
 So man þat is wo bigon ;

- For the sorowe that him befallen is, [p. 10]
 Ofte he bemeneth him self y-wis : 280 Guy cursed the
time he saw
Felice.
- 'In wicked peyne sey y may,
 That y ne may beholde hir eyen gray,
 Hir graye eyen, hir nebbe so shene ;
 For hir my lif is in a wene.
 To hir y shaft telle my thoughte,
 For whom y am in this sorowe broughte. 285 He would go and
tell her all :
- What so enere come to me good or ylle,
 I wold it noo lenger concele for to spille.
 Bot streight to hir wold y goo,
 And in hir mercy y shaft me doo ; 290
 And if she wold, she may me slee,
 And hir wille doo with me.
 Yf I my sorowe hir doo not telle,
 Allas, wrecche, how shaft y duelle ?
 Allas, wrecche, that me is woo !
 Ine wote what y may doo :
 For my lordys Doughter she is,
 And y his norry ywis ;
 Therfor the more beholding to him y bee,
 And neuere noo-wher his harme to see. 300
- If y hir loued and wite might he,
 And therwith he may take me,
 Brenne he me wolde, or the hede of smyte,
 Or highe hange for that dispite,
 Or all to-hewe with swerdes kene, 305 and might doon
him to destruction
for his presump-
tion.
- And y him did suche a tene.
 Allas, y wrecche ! what may y doo ?
 I loue hir that is my foo.'
- Nowe is Guye in so moche sorowe broughte, [p. 11]
 That of his lif he rekketh noughte ; 310
 Nor he woteth what he may doo,
 For the grete sorowe that cometh him to.
 He wende, he trende his bedde vpon,
 As man that is woo bee goon ; He threw himself
on his bed.

- He no may sitt no stonde, 315
 No vnnepe drawn his onde ;
 Turnb. p. 8, l. 175. Rest, no take slepeinge,
 Mete ete, no drinke dringe ;
 MS. 109r. col. 1. No may him noman *comforti*,
 Bot euer his song is wo & wi. 320
 In so gret þouȝt was he þo,
 & so gret sorwe toke him to,
 Leuer *him* wer walk & wende,
 & dye in trewe loue bende.
 ¶ þus [Gij] lay in grete turment 325
 Til þat þe fest was al to-went.
 Swiche an iuel is on *him* fast,
 þat he no may it of *him* cast ;
 He no wil noman his care schewe.
 His sorwes ben euer aliche newe, 330
 þat he no may his loue haue,
 Grete strengþe him doþ wiþ-drawe.
 þerfore he seyð, ' ichil hir schewe,
 My peyne is euer aliche newe ;
 Of al mi sorwe nis hir nouȝt, 335
 Ich wold ich were to deþ y-brouȝt.
 Bitide me iuel oþer gode,
 Ichil it held in mi mode ;
 & ȝif sche wil, sche may me spille,
 Ac for al þat leten y nille.' 340
- C. 215. Now is Gij to court y-go,
¹ As illegible in MS. As¹ man þat is ful of wo,
 Turnb. p. 9, l. 201. & on his knes he him dede
 Bifor Felice in þat stede,
 & to hir he spac wel euen 345
 Wiþ a wel queynt steuen,
 & seyð, ' Felice þe feir, *merci* !
 For godes loue & our leuedi,
 þat y þe no finde mi dedliche fo,
 For godes loue herken me to ! 350

He ne may sitte, nor he may stonde, 315
 Nor vnnethe vnto him drawe his honde,
 Ne reste take of any slepinge,
 Nor ete mete, nor drinke drinke ;
 Nor may noo man him comforte,
 Bot euere is songe is woo with disporte. 320

No one could
 comfort Guy.

Thus lyueth Guy in grete turmente
 TiH the feest was ouer wente ;
 Afterward he bethoughite is
 That he doth as the man wyse,
 That he shaH loue bot strengthe haue
 Him self whan him luste to with-drawe. 330
 Than thinketh he, good it is hir to shewe
 The peynes that for hir greueth me newe :
 And she of my sorowe knoweth noughite,
 To ende y wolde my lif were broughte.
 Bee-tide me yuel either goode,
 I woH not lyue in this mode ;
 Bot y shaH to hir goo,
 And in hir mercy y shaH me doo.
 Yf that she woH, she may me spille ;
 Bot for aH that y ne leue wille. 340
GUYE is to courte come,
 As man that is in sorowe noHne.
 On knees before Felice he hym didde, [p. 12]
 And sorowfully seide in that stede,
 AH with quakyng steuene ;
 Thus he seide, and spake fuH euene :
 'Felice the faire, for godd's loue, mercy !
 On me haue reuthe for our' lady,
 That y ne fynde the my fuH foo,
 For loue y you praye, herken me to. 350

325 So he lay in
 torment till the
 feast was over.

At last he resolved
 to speak to Felice,

betide him what
 might.

He came to court

and fell on his
 knees before
 Felice,

beseeching her
 favour.

No longer hele y nille,
Al that soþe tellen y wille.

355

þou art þe þing þat y most 3erne,
Fro þe no may mine hert terne ;
Opon al oþer y loue þe,
Y no may it lete ded to be. 360

¹ so MS.; read *it*.

Vnder heuen no þing nis,
Noiþer gode no qued y-wis,
þat y for þe don y¹ nolde,
To lete þat liif don y wolde.

MS. 109r. col. 2.

þou art mi liif, mi ded y-wis, 365
Wiþouten þe haue y no blis ;
Y loue þe and tow nouzt me,
Y dye for þe loue of þe.

Bot þou haue merci on me,
For sorwe ichil me self sle, 370
For wistestow þe heuinisse,
þe sorwe and þe sorinisse,

Turnb. p. 10, l. 227.

þat me is on niȝt and day
(Bi trewe loue siggen ich it may)—
& tow it miȝt wiþ eyzen se, 375
þou wost haue merci on me.'

C. 219.

Felice þe feir answerd þo,
' Artow þis, Gij, so mot þou go,
þe steward sone Suward,
Ich wene þou art a fole musard ! 380

When þou of loue me hast bisauzt,
Al to fole-hardy þou art y-tauzt.
Wele þou holdest me for a fole ;
þou art y-tauzt to a liþer scole,
& icham þi lordes douhter biname ; 385
þan dostow him wel michel schame,

- Hense forewarde y woH not hele
 The grete loue, that me doth fele :
 Shewe y muste the peyne and sorowe
 That y haue for you euyne and morowe.
 Ye bee that thyng for whom y mourne, 355
 Fro you ne may my herte tourne :
 Ouere all thinge y muste you loue,
 Whether it tourne benethe or aboue,
 Bot that y shaH loue you aye,
 Whiles that y lyue maye. 360
 Vnder heuen noo thinge is,
 Were it good or yuel ywis,
 That y for the doo it [ne] wolde,
 My lif to lese though y schulde.
 Ye bee my lif and my deth y-wis : 365
 Withoute you loste is all my blis.
 WeH more y loue you than me : [col. 2]
 Deye y shaH for loue of you pardee,
 Bot thou haue mercy on me,
 Myself y shaH for sorowe slee. 370
 Yf ye wiste the heuynesse,
 The grete peyne, and the sorowfulnesse,
 That y haue for you nyghte and daye [p. 13]
 (With true loue y it saye)—
 And you it might witterly see, 375
 I trowe ye wolde haue mercy on me.'
 Felice to him answerde thoo,
 'Telle me, Guye, if ye bee so
 The Stywardis soñe that highte Sywarde,
 I holde you for a fole musarde. 380
 Nowe thou me haste of loue besoughte,
 To fole-hardy thou art in thoughte,
 Or thou me takest for a fole.
 Thou art taughte of wikked scole,
 Whiles y am thy lordes Doughiter by name ;
 Me thinketh thou doost him mikel shame, 385

There was
nothing he
would not do
for Felice.

Unless she would
have mercy
he would slay
himself.

Felice called Guy
foolhardy,

aspiring to the
love of his lord's
daughter.

- When þou of loue bi-sechist me
 þat y schold þi leman be.
 No fond y neuer man me so missede,
 No me so of loue bede, 390
 Noyþer kniȝt no baroun,
 Bot þou þat art a garsoun,
 & art mi man, & man schalt be.
 Yuel were mi fairhed sett on þe,
 & y swiche a grome toke, 395
 & so mani grete lordinges for-soke.
 Erls, doukes of þe best
 In þis world, & þe richest,
 Turnb. p. 11, l. 253. Me haue desired apliȝt,
 þat neuer of me hadde siȝt. 400
 þat wer gret deshounour to me !
 Al to loþ mi liif me schuld be.
 Al to fole-hardi þou were,
 When þou me of loue bisouȝtest here.
C. 224. Bi mi trewþe y schal þe swere, 405
 Schal y mi fader þe tiding bere,
 þou worþest to-hewen, oþer for-do,
 (Bi þe be warned oþer mo)
 Oþer wiþ wilde hors to-drawe,
 For þi folȝ, & þat wer lawe, 410
 MS. 100v. col. 1. & oþer schul be warned bi þi dede,
 & her lordinges þe more drede.
 Go heþen, 'sche seyð, ' & vp arise,
 & cum nam-more in mi purpris !'
C. 235. ¶ Wel sorwefuliche went Gij 415
 In to his chaumber al dreri :
 Gij in to his chaumber gan to gon,
 & schett him þer in anon.
 þer in he made sorwe anouȝ,
 & his cloþes al to-drouȝ. 420
 Vnder heuen nas þat it ne miȝt haue rewþe
 Of his sorwenes & of his trewþe.

- Whan thou of loue besechest me,
 And that y shulde thy lemman bee.
 Ne fonde y neuere man that so moche mysseide,
 Nor that so folisshe of loue me preide, 390
 Neither knyghte, Erle, ne baron;
 Bot thou art bot a garson,
 That art my man, and shuldest bee. 'Should I take
 EuyH were my beaute besette on the, you, a mere
 Yf y a grome loued and toke, 395 garsoun,
 And so many faire knyghtis forsoke. forsaking earls,
 Erles, Dukes, of aH the beste, dukes, and
 And of aH the worlde the richeste lords?
 Ouere aH men desired me a plighte,
 Suche as on me neuere had sighte; 400
 Dispreised to moche y shuld bee That were
 To leue aH theim and take the ! dishonour !
 AH to grete hardiship thou thoughtest, [p. 14]
 Whan thou of loue me besoughtest.
 By my moder soule y the swere, 405 If I should tell
 And y to my fader this tyding here, my father
 To slee the or the vtterly fordo, you would be
 (By the shuH bee warned other moo) hewn in pieces
 Or with wilde hors aH to-drawe,
 For thy folie that were the lawe. 410 for your folly.
- Goo hense swithe ! vp arise,
 And come nomore here in this wise !'
FU^H SORROWFULLY thense gooth Guy
 Home to his Inne aH sory :
 In to his Chambre he is goon,
 And beshette him therin aH aloon.
 There he made sorowe and sorowe enough :
 His clothes he rende, his heer he drough. 420
 shut himself in,
 and rent his
 clothes.

- Of loue he bi-ment strongliche
 For whom þat he loued so miche :
- Turnb. p. 12, l. 279. 'Loue,' he seyð, 'slake now mi sore 425
 þat is dedeliche, as y seyð ore.
 Loue of þis ʒongling
 Makeþ me iuel fonding.
 Loue, bring me of þis wodenisse,
 & bring me in to sum lisse, 430
 For to reste me aþrowe,
 þat y miȝt meseluen knowe.
 Sore me menep, for me smert,
 Miche care is in mine hert,
 Michel ich am y-cast of miȝt 435
 Al to fer wiþ vnriȝt.
 Loue me doþ to grounde falle,
 þat y ne may stond stef wiþ alle.
 Loue doþ min cloþes done,
 & after me clepeþ 'wreche' sone. 440
 Hou schal y liue? hou schal y fare?
 Hou long schal y liuen in care?
 Leuest þing me were to dye,
 & ich wist bi wiche weye.
 Dep,' he seyð, 'wher artow so long? 445
 þou makest me y may nouȝt stond.
 þou makest me out of þe way to gon;
 Whi ne comestow to feche me anon?
 Worþi ich were ded to be :
 Y loue þing þat loueþ nouȝt me. 450
- Turnb. p. 13, l. 305. Herkeneþ now hou seiþ þe wise :
 Y schal ʒou schewe bi þis asise.
 For a fole he schal him held
 þat takeþ more þan he may weld.'
- MS. 109v. col. 2. To a fenestre þan Gij is go, 455
 C. 269. Biheld þe castel, þe tour also.
 'Tour,' he seyð, 'feir artow bisett!
 In þe is þat maiden bischett

Of loue he bemeneth him strongly,
For whom he hath sorowe gretly :

Pitifully Guy
moaned :

' Love drives me
mad ;

'Loue, a-slake me of this wodenesse,
And respite graunte me more or lesse,
That y might reste me a throwe,
Wherthurgh my sorowe may ouere blowe.
To farre y am kaste in vnmyghte,
My herte is heuy, and noo-thing' lighte.

430

I do not know
myself ;

I cannot stand
upright.

What shaft y doo ? how shaft y fare ?
I may not lyue longe in this kare.
Allas, deth ! what art thou ?
Vnnethe may y stonde now :
Deth ! come forth, and take me anon ;
For loste been my wittes euerych oon.
Dede y deserue for to bee,
Whan y muste loue that hateth me.

445 O Death ! why
dost thou avoid
me ?

[p. 15]

And herken now what seith the wise,
That sheweth ensample of good assise :
For a fole he seith y him holde,
That taketh a more burden than he may welde ;
So fare y now, weleawaye !
I loue the loue that y ne haue maye.'
To a wyndowe Guy yede thoo,
For to beholde the castel and the toure also :
' O toure, thou art full faire sette !
In the is that maide beshette,

450

455 Guy from his
window
beheld the castle,

þat liueþ þer in ioie & blis,
& ichir loue for soþe y-wis. 460

Tour, when wer thou ouer-þrowe,
And wiþ þe winde al to-blowe !
þat y miȝt hir wiþ eyzen se
þat y loue more þan me !'

He ginneþ to wepe & sore siche, 465
His care him neweþ euerliche ;

C. 278. Adoun he fel and swoune bigan,
(More sorwe made neuer man)
& cursed þe time þat he was bore,
For now he haþ his witt forlore. 470

'Loue,' he seyd, 'acursed þou be !
To michel miȝt it is in þe
þat y ne may me fro þe were ;
Loue, merci, þatow me no dere !
Leuer me were forto dye 475
þan long to liuen here in eyze.

Turnb. p. 14, l. 331. Allas, Felice, þat ich stounde,
þi loue me haþ so ybounde !
& þat y serued þe þat day,
Acursed be þat time, seyen y may ! 480

No bid ichaue non oþer mede,
Bot slake mi sorwe, ichaue nede.
Y loue þe & tow nouȝt me.
Euen dole may it nouȝt be ;
For of mi sorwe no hastow nouȝt. 485

Allas ! to grounde icham ybrouȝt !
þou hast þe gode, & y þe quede :
Y brenne so spark on glede.
Sepþe þou me lokedest first to,
þou me woundest wiþ a flo. 490

Schal y dye for þat siȝt ?
Merci, Felice, þat swete wiȝt !
Mine hert is ful of venim spilt,
Of blis no worþ it neuer fild.'

That lyueth in ioye and in blisse :
 Hir loue me woundeth withoute mysse. 460
 O toure, why ne were thou ouerethrawe,
 And vpon the grounde aH to-drawe !
 Than might y my lemman see,
 That y loue more than me !'
 He gynneth him bethinke and sore sighē, 465 which redoubled
 His sorowe enneweth euere gretly ; his woe.
 To grounde he felle, and swowne beganne :
 More sorowe had neuere manne.
 The tyme he cursed that he was borē ;
 For loue he hath his witte lorē. 470 Guy cursed the
 'O loue,' he seide, 'cursed thou bee ! day of his bir'
 So moche mighte is in the.

and wished for
death.

Allas, Felice ! that same stounde,
 That euere thy loue hath me so stronge bounde !
 And that y the serue shulde that daye,
 Allas the while ! nowe y sey maye. 480 He cursed the
 ShaH y not haue noon other mede, [p. 16] time he saw
 To a-slake my sorowe y had nede. Felice ;
 I loue the and thou noughite me.
 Eeuēly deled ne that may¹ bee :
 Of aH my sorowe thou hast noughite. 485 [1 read ne may
 Allas ! to grounde y am broughite ! that]
 Thou hast the good and y the quede :
 I brenne as doth the sparke on glede.
 Thou art to lither a woman,
 That for a lokyng the vpon 490
 A man shuld dye for that sighte :
 Mercy, Felice, thou swete wighite !
 Myn herte is with venym spilde ;
 With blisse nomore it is like bee filde.'

he burned as a
firebrand.

- Swiche liif ladde Gij sikerliche 495
 Al that seuennijt holeliche.
 His fader was for him sori,
 Sabin his moder biment Gij,
 MS. 110r. col. 1. þerl for him sori was,
 þer liked non in that plas : 500
 Litel & michel, al & some,
 Biment Gij att[e] frome.
- C. 247.** **P**erl dede þe leches of-sende
 Turnb. p. 15, l. 357. Of Gyes iuel to wite þat ende.
 þe leches ben to him y-go : 505
 Gij þai finde blaike and blo ;
 Hij asked him where his iuel stode.
 He seyð for hete he brend nere wode :
 ‘So hot ich am, & bren[n]inge,
 Mi sorwe is euer cominge, 510
 þat al mi limes it hap to-tijt ;
 Swiche liif y lede day & nijt.
 After þe hete me comeþ a chele
 þat me greueþ wiþ vn-skele,
 þat y wex cold as ise. 515
 So vn-kinde iuel it is,
 þat al mine limes it wil to-te ;
 & seþþe me comeþ swouninges þre,
 For anguis swoune it me doþ
 Tviis or þriis, y say for soþ. 520
 Swiche liif y lede nijt & day :
 Non oþer wise y no can 3ou say.’
- C. 265.** ¶ þan seyð þat on, ‘a feuer it is.’
 ‘3a,’ quod Gij, ‘a liþer y-wis.’
 þe leches gon, & lete Gij one, 525
 þat makeþ wel michel mone.
 ‘God,’ quod Gij, ‘what schal y do ?
 Hou long schal y liuen in wo ?
 Turnb. p. 16, l. 383. þat y no miȝt ded be,
C. 265. When y no may hir wiþ eyȝen se, 530

Suche lif had Guy sikirly
 AH that weke hoolly.

495 So Guy went on
 for a week.

For him his fader was weH sory,
 Sabyne his moder bemeneth Guy,
 The Erle for him sory was,
 That it liked noon in that place :
 LiteH and moche, aH and some,
 Guy bemeneth at Frome.

His father,
 Sabin his mother,
 and the Earl, all
 bemoaned him.

500

THE ERLE did for leches sende
 To wite of Guyes euyl an ende.

The Earl sent
 physicians to
 discover the
 nature of his
 illness.

505

The leches to him been goo :
 Guy they fonde as blak as sloo ;
 Than they asked how it with him stode.
 'For hete,' he seide, 'y breide nyghte wode :

So mikeH hete is in me,
 That longe y ne may on lyue bee.

510

Hotter y am thanne fire brennyng,
 Sorowe and woo is my menyng ;
 AH my body it hath vnright :
 Suche lif y lede daye and nyght.

[p. 17]

Guy pretended he
 had an inter-
 mittent fever.

After that hete cometh a chele
 That sore me greueth withoute hele ;
 Than wexe y colder than the yys :
 Suche maner myn yuel is.

515

This is my lif nyghte and daie :
 No more y kan therof you saie.'

THANNE seide that oon, 'a feuer' it is.'
 'Ye,' quoth Guy, 'the leuer me y-wis.'

The physicians
 assented,

The leches goth, and Guy leue allone,
 That rewthfully maketh his mone.

525 and left him.

'Now god,' quoth Guy, 'what shaH y doo ?
 How longe shaH laste me this woo ?

Guy recommenced
 his lament.

Why ne may y dede bee,
 Whan y ne may hir' mery yen see,

530

- þat haþ al mine hert & þouzt!
 & y no misgilt hir neuer nouzt,
 Bot on þat ichir loue wel,
 & euer more loue schel!
 3if ich it hir schewe, sche wil telle 535
 Hir fader, & he me wil quelle.
 þei he it wist, siker aplizt,
 More þan me sle don he no mizt.
 3if he me slouz, it were schonde,
 Schuld y þan for deþ wonde; 540
 To hir for soþe ichil go
 & schewe hir of mi michel wo.
 MS. 110r. col. 2. Vnder heuen [n]is so strong þing
 So is loue and wowing.
 Now,' he seyð, 'what for þan? 545
 þei ich hir loue, blame me noman;
 To warant ichil drawe atte frome
 þat loue doþ me þider come,
 & þat loue doþ me go to þe
 þat y no may wiþ-hold me.' 550
C. 293. **W**ith þis Gij arisen is,
 & to þe gate goþ y-wis.
 'God,' quod Gij, 'y do foliliche:
 Y sle me seluen sikerliche;
 Turnb. p. 17, l. 409. Mine owthen [deþ] y go now secheinde. 555
 God,' he seyð, 'be mine helpinde!
 Adoun he fel a-swounie;
 & when he gan to dawei,
 'To þe court,' he seyð, 'ichil go,
 Be it for wele or for wo: 560
 To þe court ichil, what so bitide,
 þei gret strengþe me do abide.'
C. 295. Now is Gij to court y-comen
 As man þat is wiþ sorwe y-nome,
 & in to an erber he is y-go, 565
 Felice findeþ þer in þo;

That hath aH myn hert's thoughte?
 And y neuere amysse did hir nough̃te,
 Bot oonly that y loue hir weH,
 And euere while y lyue shaH.
 Yf y hir beseche, she woH it telle
 Hir fader, and than he woH me quelle.
 And though he it wiste right nowē, a pligh̃te,
 Nomore than slee me doo he mighte.

535

'If her father
 knew,
 he could only
 slay me.

Bot y shaH goo and speke hir' too,
 And shewe hir' my grete woo.
 Vnder' heuen is not so harde thing'
 As is loue in wowyng'.

541

Yet seide he after thanne,
 'Though she me blame, noo force y kanne;
 Bot to hir y shaH sey so,
 That loue me did thider goo.'

[p. 18] 545

I will go to her
 again

Guy with that arisen is,
 And to the Courte he wente ywis.

551 Guy went off.

After a swoon,

Nowe is Guy to Courte come,
 As man that was with woo nome;
 In to an herber' he is goo,
 Felice he fonde therin thoo;

565 he found Felice
 in a garden.

WARWICK.

D

- At hir fet he him leyd,
 Al wepeand to hir he seyde,
C. 304. 'Felice, now ich am comen to þe,
 & ȝif þou wilt, þou miȝt m[e] sle, 570
 For now icham wiþ-in thi loke,
 & þine hest ichaue to-broke.
 For ich would þatow seye
 þe sorwe þat y for þe dreye :
 þe strong pine & þe wo 575
 Y dreye for þe euer-mo.
 Mine hert schal bileue wiþ þe :
 Wiltow, niltow, it schal¹ so be,
 þat² mi bodi ferli³ may,
 Bot þat wille it lasteþ ay. 580
- Turnb. p. 18, l. 435. þer while y liue, loue y þe wille,
 & bot ȝif y do, ichil me spille ;
 For me no schal it to-deled be
 þer while þat liif it lasteþ in me ;
 þe to loue no miȝtow me forbede, 585
 In wo & sorwe þou dost me fede.
- [leaf 110v. col. 1] Whan it worþ þi fader y-teld
 þatow hast mine hert in weld,
 & he wite that y loue þe,
 Ichot for soþe he wil me sle ; 590
 & þat schal turn me al to blis
 When y schal dye for soþe y-wis.
 Henne forward ne reche y me
 Of mi liif, whare it be,
 No of mi deþ neuer þe mo 595
 No reche y neuer where y go.'
- C. 317.** He ferd as he wer mat,
 Adoun he fel aswoune wiþ þat ;
 Felice stode & loked him to
 & biheld his strong wo ; 600

¹ MS. *itschal*.² read *þat me?*³ read *fersi?*

At hir fete he him leyde,
 And than aȝ wepyng to hir he seide :
 ' Y am come mercy to aske of the ;
 Yf thou woȝt thou maist slee me ; 570
 Thy commaundement y wote weȝt y haue broke,
 Now that y am come before thy loke.
 And leef me were surely
 The sorowe that y haue suffred by and by,
 Stronge peyne sorowe and woo 575
 That y for the haue endured eueremoo.
 Myȝ herte shaȝt y leue with the :
 Woȝt thou or not, so shaȝt it bee ;
 My body farther' goo ne may,
 And my wille lasteth ay. 580
 While y lyue, the loue y wille,
 Whether' y saue my self or spille ;
 Thurgh me demed it shaȝt not bee
 Whiles that lif is within me.
 The to loue thou may not forbede,
 585 Thou canst not
 With sorowe and woo thou dost me fede. forbid me to love
 thee.

Fro hense foreward it rekketh not me [p. 19] I reek nought of
 Of my lif how so it bee, life or death.
 Ne of my deth neuere the moo 595
 I ne rekke how that it goo,
 For of this lif y am chekmate.'
 A-downe he felle swounyng' with that ;
 Felice loked vpon him thoo.
 And behelde his grete woo ; 600
 Ruthe she had in hir herte
 Of his sorowe and his smerte.

He swooned, and
 Felice bade a
 maiden lift him
 up.

To a mayde sche seyd þo :

¹ MS. *onpe* 'Take him vp in þine armes to,
& lay him soft on þe¹ grounde'; 605
& sche dede so in þat stounde.
þat mayden ʒede to him wepeinde,
& Gij wel sore biminde :

Turnb. p. 19, l. 461. 'Bi god² of heuen,' sche seyd,
C. 330. & ich wer as feir a mayd, 610
² MS. *Bigod* & as riche kinges douhter were

As ani in þis warld here,
& he of mi loue vnder-nome were,
As he is of þine in strong manere,
& he wald me so o loue ʒerne, 615
Me þenke y no myʒt it him nouʒt werne.'

Felice the feir answerd þo :
'Damisel,' sche seyd, 'whi seistow so ?

þou art to blame, al-so y se,
No-þing þer-mid no paistow me. 620

Oft þou hast y-herd in speche
þat we no schal no man biseche,
Ac men schul biseche wimen
In the feirest maner þat þai can,
& fond to speden ʒif þai may 625

³ MS. *biniʒtes* Bope bi³niztes and bi day.'

Of his swouning he vpros þo ;
þe maiden him tok in armes to.
Felice seyd to Gij, 'þou dost folie,
þatow wilt for mi loue dye ; 630

Schal y do mi fader of-sende ?
I schal him telle word & ende,

[leaf 110v. col. 2] þat tow dost me litel worþschipe,
When þou me desirest to schenschipe ;

Turnb. p. 20, l. 487. In his court he schal deme þe,
& al to-lime, to queme me.'

¶ Gij answerd anon þer-to,
'God ʒeue þat it wer y-do,

To a maide she seide thoo :

'Take him vp in thyn armes twoo,

And ley him vp fro the grounde, 605

TiH him bee past that bitter stounde.'

'By god of heuen,' that maide seide,

'Though y were of the worlde the fairest maide, 610

And the Richest Kyng's Doughter were

That in this worlde crowne dooth bere,

And he of my loue desirous were,

As he is of thine in stronge manere,

Ne wolde y him my loue werne, 615

And he me wolde therof lerne.

Felice the faire answerd therto :

'Avoide, damesell, why seist thou so ?

So thou shuld not rede me ;

Thou art to blame forsothe y telle the. 620

Thou hast ofte herde this speche,

That we ne shuld noman beseche,

But they shuld beseche women

On the fairest manere that they kan,

And assaye yf they spede may [p. 20] 625

Either by nyghte or by day.'

Guy of swounyng awaked thoo ;

The maide helde him in hir armes twoo.

'GUYE,' QUOTH Felice, 'thou doost folie : 630

WoH thou for my loue dye ?

After my fader y woH sende,

And telle him euery worde to the ende,

That thou him doost grete disworship

Whan thou desirest my shenship ;

In this Courte he shaH dampne the 635

Highe to hange, to please me.

Guye answerd anone right thoo :

'Now god wolde it might bee so,

The maiden pitied him.

She said, were she the fairest on earth, she could not refuse him.

Felice reproved her for her sympathy with Guy.

Guy recovered consciousness.

Felice pointed out how angry her father would be.

¹ MS. *pouhaddest* þat of mi dep þou haddest¹ wite !
 Of mi liif is me bot lite ; 640
 Redi ich am it to vnder-fong,
 Be it wiþ riȝt, be it wiþ wrong.'

C. 341. ¶ Felice hadde of him gret rewþe :
 'Gij,' quod [sche], 'þou louest me in trewþe ;
 Al to michel þou art afoild,
 Now þi blod it is acoild. 650
 Ac o thing y grant þe ;
 More no miȝtow asky me :
 þer nis leuedi, no maiden non,
 In þis cuntre so wide so man may gon,
 & tow louedest hir astow dost me 655
 þat sche no wold grant hir loue to þe.'

Gij seyð to Felice, 'now lete þis be ;
 Now me þenke þou scornnest me.
 Nis me nouȝt iuel anouȝ y-diȝt,
 When þou wilt of me no-wiȝt ? 660

² MS. *afo/e* Now a fole² ich-il be
 & mi witt chaunȝe for þe !'

C. 355. 'Gij,' seyð Felice, 'now vnder-stond :
 For now nil y noȝing wond ;
 Turnb. p. 21, l. 513. & þei y say þe al mi wille, 665
 No hold it for non vn-skille :
 No grome louen y no may
 Fort he be kniȝt forsoþ to say,
 Feir & beld to tellen by,
 S[t]rong in armes & hardi ; 670
 & when þou hast armes vnder-fong,
 & ichaue it vnder-stonde,
 þan schaltow haue þe loue of me,
 ȝif þow be swiche as y telle þe.'

- That of my deth thou might bee the wite !
 Therof y shulde bee wonder lighte !
 I am aH redy it to fonge,
 Bee it with right or with wronge ;
 For suche a drinke me is yiuē,
 That y ne kepe noo lenger lyue ;
 Myn hede y shaH fayne for the leye,
 I rekke not what any man seye.'
 Felice had of him grete ruthe :
 'Guye,' she seide, 'thou louest in truthe ;
 To moche thou art thurgh loue assailed,
 That thy wittes been gretly dismaied.
 So moche y shaH nowe doo for the
 That more thou maist not bidde me :
 Ther nys Lady nor man noon), [p. 21]
 So wide as me might in this Contree goon),
 And thou loued hir as thou doost me,
 But she wolde graunte to loue the.'
 'Felice,' quoth Guy, 'lete that bee,
 For thou doost bot scorne me.'

640 Guy wished he
was put to death
for his love.

645

Felice began to
pity him.

650

She granted that
his love would
prevail with any
maiden.

655

Guy begged her
not to mock him.

'Guy,' quoth Felice, 'nowe vnderstonde :
 My wille y haue to the in this stounde ;
 And take it not for noon vnskilke
 Though y sey to the my wille.
 I woH loue noo knaue in woH
 Before that he bee knyght bee-come,
 Faire and hende and gretly sette by,
 Of armes good and hardy ;

665 Felice undertook

if Guy were a
knight

670

Thanne shaH thou haue the loue of me,
 Yf thou wolbee as y telle the.'

he should have
her love.

C. 365. **W**hen Gij herd þat tiding, 675
For ioie his hert gan to spring ;

At hir he tok leue anon,
In-to the castel he gan to gon ;
Al so swiþe as he it miȝt do,
In-to the court he gan to go : 680

[leaf 111r. col. 1]

¹ s added over the
line.

Of euerich day him þought ten
Fort he seye his¹ lemen.

C. 375. & when he feld him hole & fere,
He went to court wiþ glad chere ;
Michel ioie wiþ him þai made, 685
& alle þai wer bliþe & glade.

To þerl þan went Gij,
& gret þat kniȝt hardi, 690
& seyð, ‘sir, þine armes ich ax ;

Turnb. p. 22, l. 539.

ȝif ich am þer to y-wax,
Ich am redi hem to fong,
& þe to serue wiþ-uten wrong.’
þerl answerd, & seyð þo, 695

C. 384. ‘Bleþeliche, Gij, seþþe þou wilt so.’

¶ þerl dede anon aparaille
Gyes dobing wiþ-uten feyle ;
Wel richelich he dubbed Gij,
& wiþ him felawes tventi, 700
þat al barouns sones were
(For Gyes loue he dubbed hem þere),
þat wiþ þerl Rohaud hadde ben long,
In his seruise armes to vnder-fong.

It was at þe holy trinite. 705

¶ þerl dubbed sir Gij þe fre,
& wiþ him tventi god gomis,
Kniȝtes and riche baroun sonis.
Of cloth of Tars & riche cendel
Was he[r] dobbeing euerich a del ; 710

- T**HANNE GUY herde that tyding,
 For ioye his herte beganne to spryng;
 His loue to hir anone he kaste than,
 And in-to the CasteH forthwith he cam;
 As sone as he might it doo,
 To the highe palais he ganⁿ goo :
 Of oonⁿ daie hym thoughte ten,
 That he ne might see his lemman.
 Whanⁿ he him felte hole and suer,
 To Courte he gooth with gladde cher'
 Full gladde chere they him made,
 And thanked god, and were right glade
 That Guy was to Courte come : [p. 22]
 Gladde they were all and some.
 Before the Erle tho come Guy,
 To him he kneled as to his lorde mighti;
 'Sir,' quoth Guy, 'armes y aske the,
 Yf y bee worthy accepte to bee;
 Yf it bee thy wille that y theim fonge,
 And serue the lorde withoute wronge.'
THE ERLE Rohaud answerd thoo,
 'Blithely, Guy, sithe thou wolt so.'
 The Erle dooth than apparaille
 Guyes dobbingⁿ withoute faille;
 He dud him dobbe richely,
 And with him of his felawes twenty
 That all good barons soñes were,
 (For Guyes loue he dubbed theim all there)
 That with the Erle Rohaud had bee longe
 In service, armes for to fonge.
 It was at the fest of the holy Trinite,
 That the Erle dubbed Guy so free,
 And other twenty for his loue,
 Good knyghtis [and] barons soñes, aboue.
 Of riche Clothes and sendall
 Was theirⁿ dobbyng, thurgh-oute all;
- 675 On hearing this,
 Guy's heart leaped
 for joy.
- 680
- He soon felt hale,
 and repaired
 gladly to court.
 685
- 690 He begged the
 Earl to dub him
 a knight.
- 695 The Earl
 promised he
 would,
- and dubbed Guy
 with twenty
 other young men.
 700
- 705 The ceremony
 took place at the
 Holy Trinity.
- 710

- þe panis al of fow & griis,
 þe mantels weren of michel priis,
 Wiþ riche armour & gode stedes,
 þe best þat wer in lond at nedis.
 Alder-best was Gij y-dizt, 715
 þei he wer an emperour sone, aplizt :
 So richeliche dobbed was he,
 Nas no swiche in þis cuntre ;
 Turnb. p. 23, l. 565. Wiþ riche stedes wele erminde,
 Palfreys, coursours wele bereinde. 720
 No was þer noþer sweyn no knaue,
 þat ouzt failed þat he schuld haue.
 ¶ Now is sir Gij dobbed to knizt ;
 Feir he was and michel of mizt.
 C. 429. To Felice went sir Gij, 725
 & gret hir wel curteyslie,
 [leaf 111r. col. 2] & seyð, 'ichaue don astow seydest me to,
 For þe ichaue suffred miche wo :

Arme for þe ichaue vnder-fong,
 þe to se me þouzt long.
 þou art me boþe leue & dere,
 Ich am y-comen þi wille to here.'
 ¶ 'Gij,' seyð Felice, 'heye þe nouzt : 735
 3ete hastow no þing of armes y-wrouzt.
 No artow þe better neuer a del
 þan þou wer ere, y say þe wel,
 Bot on þatow [hast] newe dobing,
 & art cleped knizt wiþ-uten lesing ; 740

Of riche panys of faire grys,
 And with mante^His riche of pris;
 Of good armes and stoute stedes,
 Of aH the londe the beste at nedes.
 Ouere theim aH was Guy best dighte, 715
 Though he an Emperour's soñe had bee righte :'
 Ther' might noon better dighte bee : [p. 23]
 With aH kynnes armes dobbed was he.

They were richly
arrayed,

but Guy most
richly of all.

Ther' ne was squier neither knaue
 That failled ough^te bot he shuld haue.
 Now is Guy dobbed knyght,
 Curteis and hende, and of grete myght.
 Than to Felice he ganne goo,
 With grete loue he resouned hir thoo :
 'WeH thou wotest, lemman, that it is so,
 For the that y haue suffred grete woo
 In aH my body, y the plighte,
 Thou hast made me passing' lighte. 725
 Armes y haue for the fonge,
 The to see me thoughte longe;
 Now y am at thy wille come,
 As to hir' that y loue most in woñe.
 Than seide Felice, 'ne haste the nought :
 Yet hast thou noo thing' of armes wroughte.
 Noo better thou art neuere a dele
 Than thou were before, y preoue it wele,
 Bot only that thou hast newe doobbyng',
 And knyght art cleped withoute lesyng'. 730
 Bot whan y may wite and see
 That thou hast in torment's bee,
 And that thou hast knyghtes nome,
 Castell's and Toures ouerecome,
 And thurgh aH the londe and Contree
 Thy knyghthode full good knowen bee, 740

725 Thereafter, Guy
presented himself
to Felice,

730 and claimed her
love.

735 But she told him,

740 he had done
nothing yet :

745

Bot it be þurch þi miȝt,
þou no miȝt chalang loue þurch riȝt.'

C. 445. **W**hen Gij herd Felice so speke, 750
He tok his leue and gan out reke ;

At hir leue he tok anon,
& to his fader he gan to gon,

Turnb. p. 24, l. 591. & seyde, 'fader, vnder-stond me :

Icham newe dobbed as ȝe may se, 755
Ouer þe se ichil now fare

To win priis & los þare.'
His fader him answerd sone,

C. 475. 'Sone, god leue þe wele to done !
& als michel as þe nede be, 760
Sone, schaltow haue wiþ þe.'

¶ Suward cleped Herhaud to him,
& seyde, 'Herhaud, frende min,
Wiþ Gi mi sone schaltow wende ; 765
In gode stede mot ȝe lende.
þou schalt kepe mi sone Gij,
For he is mi sone & tow mi norri.

Loke, Herhaud, þat tow him kepe ;
& þine felawes þat ben ȝepe,
Boþe Torold & sir Vrri,
On ȝou y trust sikerli ;
& wiþ Herhaud schul ȝe go 775
To kepe mi sone from care & wo.'
& hii answerd sone anon,
'Hastiliche, sir, wil we wiþ him gon.'

þai weren boþe strong kniȝtes,
Bold and hardi in ich fiȝtes.¹ 780

¹ altered to *fiȝtes*
in MS.

C. 485. Gij tok wiþ him what he wold
Boþe of siluer & of gold.

And that it bee for thy myghte,

he must prove his
valour.

And than thou may aske me loue with righte.

WHANNE GUY herde Felice so speke, [p. 24]

His leue he toke and ganne oute reke; 750

Of Felice he toke his leue anone,

And to his Fader he gan gone.

Guy then asked
his father's leave

'Sir,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me :

I am nowe dobbed as ye may see ;

Ouer see y woH fare

755 to fare over sea.

To take lawes and pris there.'

Syward his fader answerd his soñe,

'God graunte the weH ayene to come !

Siluer and golde take enowe,

As moche as nedeth for thy prow ;

760

At thy wille take with the

Hors and harneys and good mayne.'

Sywarde clepeth heraude to him,

And seide, 'heraude, frende myn,

With my soñe thou shalt wende

In good stede with him to lende.

Thou shalt kepe my soñe Guy

That is yonge knyght and thy nory,

For he is bot a yongelyng ;

I you betече bothe to heuen King,

770

And the heraude for to kepe ;

And thy felawes aH by hepe,

That is Tureld and Vrry,

In you y truste sikirly ;

To-gider with heraude they shuH goo,

775

To kepe my soñes body fro woo.'

'Sir,' quoth they euerychon,

[p. 25]

'FuH gladly we woH with him goon.'

Knyghtes they were fuH good, y plighite,

Of aH the contree the best in fighite.

780

Guy toke of siluer and golde

As moche as he haue wolde.

His father gave
him three
knights,
Herhaud,

Torold, and Urry,
as companions.

[leaf 111v, col. 1]
Turnb. p. 25, l. 617.

To þe se þai ben now y-come,
& seyled ouer atte frome.

þai comen in-to Normondye, 785

Knight-schippe þai sechen on heye ;

In Ron Gij takeþ his herberwe

Wip þe richest man of þe borwe ;

Mete & drink þai hadde anouȝ,

Nas þer non þat it wip-drouȝ. 790

Sir Gij his ost cleped him to,

& him bi-gan to frein þo,

& asked him wher þe turnament schuld be, 795

So mani scheldes þan seye he.

C. 511. His ost seyde, 'sir, wite ȝe nouȝt

Of þis turnament þat is biþouȝt?'

'No,' seyde Gij, 'bi mine wite,

Y no herd þer-of neuer ȝete.' 800

His ost him answerde snelle,

'Of þat turnament y schal ȝou telle :

It schal be for a maiden of priȝs,

þemperours douhter sche is ;

A turnament he haþ don grede, 805

A swiþe michel & vn-rede.

C. 521. þer nis no kniȝt in Speyne,

Al to þe se of Breteyne,

þat ouȝt y-told wip be,

þer men schal his miȝt se. 810

Turnb. p. 26, l. 643.

He þat best doþ þat day,

þer he schal winne þat play.

Of euerich londe þider com kniȝtes,

þat strong ben & bold in fiȝtes ;

For who that is gode & snelle, 815

As ichaue herd oþer men telle,

Who þat þer be of mest miȝt,

Grete worþschipe he winneþ, apliȝt.

To the see they been come,
 And ouere they saille at Frome;
 Come they been in-to Normandye,
 Knyghthode shewyng by and by.
 At¹ taketh Guy herborough
 With the richest of that borowgh;
 Of the best they had enough,
 Ne was ther noon that it with-drough;
 For they had enough euere² see,
 Golde and siluer grete plentee.

With them he
 departed over sea,

785 and arrived
 in Normandy,
 at Rouen.

[¹ *Blank space*
in MS.]

GUYE HIS hoste cleped him to;
 Tidinges he asked of him thoo

Guy questioned
 his host,

Where that any torment shuld bee,
 So many sheldes ledde sawe he.

795

'Sir,' quoth his hoste, 'ne wote ye nough
 Of a torment that is bethought?'

and learned that
 there was to be a
 tournament,

'Noo,' quoth Guy, 'by Iesu swete,
 Therof ne herde y neuere yette.'

800

'Sir,' quoth his hoste, 'and ye wol duelle,
 Aȝ that y wote y shaȝ you telle:

A maide brighte and of grete pris,
 (Of Almaine the Emperours Doughter she is)

in honour of the
 Emperor's
 daughter.

A turnement she hath doo cryde,

805

I herde neuere noon suche on this side;

For there nys knyghte in aȝ Spaigne, [p. 26]

Anone to the see of Britaigne,

That of armes aught is named bee,

Bot there his might men shaȝ see.

810

The winner of the
 tournament was
 to have

Of euery londe thider come knyghtes,
 Proude and bolde, and stronge in fighites,

And they that been of most mighte,
 Grete worship they shaȝ wyne, aplighte.

For þe maiden y spac of er,
 Is þemperours douhter Reyner; 820
 He schal bring to þe turment þat day
 (Wele is him þat it winne may)

C. 537. A ger-fauk þat is milke white
 (To him nis nowhare his liche),
 & a stede of gret bounte 825
 (He no schuld be ȝouen for a cuntre).
 & tvaï grehoundes þat white ben
 (Swiche no haþ men nowhare y-sen).

[leaf 111v. col. 2] & who so winneþ þe turnament al
 Bi aiþer half, þe priis have schal, 830
 þe gerfauk & þe gode stede
 Boþe he schal haue to mede,
 & þe tvaï grehoundes þat gode beþ
 He schal haue þat þer best deþ,
 & þe maiden þat is so fre, 835
 Bot he haue a fairer in his cuntre.'

Turnb. p. 27, l. 669.

C. 549. ¶ When sir Gij herd þat tiding,
 Glad he was wiþ-outen lesing;
 Sir Gij seyd to his fere,
 'In gode time come we here : 840
 To morwe, so sone so it is day,
 We wil wenden in our way.'
 Sir [Gij] his ost a palfrey ȝaf þo,
 For þe tiding he teld him to.
 Anon amorwe wel erliche 845
 þai don hem in her wai sikerliche.

Of rideing wil þai neuer stent
 To þai com to þe turnament. 850
 & when þai wer þider y-come,
 þai seye þer mani douȝti gome:
 Bi feldes & bi riuers ridinde
 Mani a kniȝt þai seye cominde.

- For that maide y spake of eer,
 Is the Emperours doughter Reyner ; 820
 To that turnement he wolþ bringe that daye
 (WeH may him bee that it wyne maye)
 A Girfauk aH swanne white a milk-white
 (Of his better y herde neuere yette) falcon,
 And an hors of grete bountee 825 a steed,
 (It is worthe aH a contree)
 And twoo Greyhoundes that good bee 2 white grey-
 (Their' better did ye neuere see) ; hounds,
 And he that the turnement ouere-cometh aH
 On euery behalue, the pris he haue shaH, 830
 The White Girfauk and the stede
 Bothe he shaH haue to his mede
 And the Greyhoundes that so good beth,
 AH shaH he haue that best doeth ;
 And that maide that is so free, 835 and the maiden
 Bot he haue a lemman that fairer bee.' herself.
 Whan Guy herde this tyding,
 WeH gladde he was withoute lesyng ;
 Than seide Guy to his feere,
 'In good tyme come we here. 840
 To morowe as sone as it is daye, [p. 27]
 We wolþ doo vs on oure weye.'
 Guy to his hoste a palfrey yaf
 For the tidingis that he him tolde hath.
 On the morowe fuH tymely , 845 and presented his
 On their' wey thei dresse theim sikirly, host with a
 Guy and his feres goode palfrey for his
 Barons aH of kynde blode. tidings.
 Of riding doth they neuere stent
 TiH they come to that turnement. 850 Next morning
 Whan thei thider were come they made their
 And¹ sawe there many a semely man. way
 Bothe by Ryuers and by feldes riding
 Many knyghtes they sawe comyng
 WARWICK. 1 read *thei*

- & when þai were þider y-come, 855
 To þe turnament þai went al & some ;
 Out of þe rengge þai gun hem diȝt,
 þe barouns þat were of miche miȝt.
 þan oxd anon sir Gij
 To þe barouns þat oned¹ him bi : 860
C. 570. ‘What is he, þat ich kniȝt,
 þat out of þe reнге hap him diȝt,
 Wiȝ þo armes briȝt & schene ?’
 Hii answerd anon : ‘y wene,
 It is a kniȝt of miche priis, 865
 Douhti he is bi Seyn Deniis ;
 Out of þe rengge he hap him diȝt,
 ȝif he miȝt finden ani kniȝt
 þat wiȝ him wald iusti ;
 þer-to he makeȝ him redi.’ 870
 Ozaines sir Gij þer come Gayer,
 To iuste wiȝ him he drouȝ him ner ;
 He rode to him as a gode kniȝt,
 He semed a man² of miche miȝt.
- MS. 112r, col. 1. Gaier smot sir Gij bifore
 & þurch þe scheld³ him hap i-bore ;
 þe launce brak, þat was wele wrouȝt,
 þe hauberk was gode & failed nouȝt. 880
 Gij afterward Gaier smot,
 To grounde he feld him fot hot,
 þe stede toke bi the reyn,
 & lepe vp wiȝ gret meyn.
- C. 582.** Now ginneȝ þe turnamint : 885
 Ich smit on oper wel gode dint ;
 þai smiten togider for soȝ, y pliȝt,
 Eueriche to nim oper dede his miȝt.
 Wel mani kniȝtes Gij wan þat day,
 Of þe maistri he wan þat play ; 890

¹ read *houed* ?Turnb. p. 28,
l. 695.² MS. *aman*³ MS. *þescheld*

And whan thei thider aH were come,
 To ioustes they wente than full soñe;
 Oute of the thrange they gan theim dighte,
 The Baroñs aH of grete mighte.

Than asked sir Guy

Of a lorde that stode him by :

‘ Who is nowe that same Knyght

That oute of the rowe dooth him dight?’

‘ I shaH telle the : as y wene,

That same with the armes shene

A Knyght he is of grete pris,

And y the swere by seynt Denys,

For to iouste he is dighte,

And he may fynde any knyghte

That ayenst him darre iousty :

Therto he maketh him redy.’

WHANNE GUYE sawe comyng was Gayer, 870 who rode out to
meet him.
[p. 28]

Redy to iouste he draweth him ner’;

It was Gayer :

Oute of the Rowe he dooth him hye,

WeH he sembled as a knyghte hardye.

They smytteñ than to geders thoo,

Full harde strokes they yiuen bothe two.

Gaer smote Guy before,

they encounter.

Thurghoute the shelde his launce he bore ;

The launce to-brake, that was so weH wrought :

The hauberkis were good and failed nought.

And Guy to Gaer thoo he smote,

That to grounde he felled him fote hote ;

Guy throws him,

That hors he taketh by the Reyne

And forthe he wendeth with meyne.

Tho beganne that turnement :

Eche Knyght on other smote good dent ;

Harde they smyte, y the plighte,

Eche to take other they doo their mighte.

So many knyghtis Guy toke that daye

And thurgh his strength ouercome that playe,

and routs all
whom he meets.

- So mani helmes he to-drof,
 þat mani man wonderd þer-of :
 Turnb. p. 29, l. 721. Sat he neuer so wel no so fast,
 þat he no feld him sone on hast.
 þe douke Otus of Pauie 895
 To Gij he hadde envie ;
 Wiþ him he wald iusti,
 It turned him to vilani.
 þe douke come prikiand on his stede
 þat certeyne was, and gode at nede, 900
 & sir Gij on anoþer al-so ;
 Gode kniȝtes þai weren bo.
C. 603. Gij þurch þe scholder him smot,
 & feld him to grounde fot hot.
 ¶ þe douke Reyner seye þat cas 905
 Of Sessoine : wel modi he was.
 He come als swiþe as he miȝt driue,
 Gij to smite he heyed blue,
 & seyde to him : 'in iuel stounde
 3af þou þe douke Otous wounde. 910
 To wroþer hele iuste þou wiþ him.
 He is mi germain cosyn :
 Icham þe douke Reyner þat to þe speke ;
 Icham y-comen him to awreke :
 Turn þe and iuste wiþ me.' 915
 'Blepeliche,' quod Gij, 'bi my leute.'
C. 617. **G**ij him turned & gan to smite ;
 He nold spare him bot lite ;
 Turnb. p. 30, l. 747. He smot þe douke on þe scheld,
 þat it fleye in þe feld, 920
 MS. 112r. col. 2. & bar þe douke Reyner saunfeil
 Ouer & oue[r] his hors tayl.
 þe stede bi þe reyn he haþ y-nome,
 Oȝain to þe douke he is y-come.
 'Here is þine hors, y ȝiue it te ; 925
 When ichaue nede, aquite it me !'

That euery man wondred therof :
 So many helmes he there all to-drof.
 That daye satte noman there so faste,
 Bot that he felled him at the laste.
 And the Duke Otes of Pauye
 At Guy he had grete enuye ;
 For pride he wolde with him iousty,
 And therof hym befelle grete vilanye.

895 He overthrowes
 Otous, duke of
 Pavia,

Thurgh the shulder Guy him smote,
 To grounde he felle, god it wote.
 The Duke Reyner sawe that caas, [p. 29]
 And therefore he full angry was.
 Toward Guy he ganne dryue,
 Him to smyte he hieth bylyue
 And seide to Guy : 'in euyl stounde
 Thou gaue Duke Otes a greuouse wounde.
 In euyl tyme thou iousted with him.
 He is my nyghthe germayne Cousyn :
 I am the Duke Reyner that to the speke ;
 I am come him on the to awreke.'
 'I graunte,' quoth Guy, 'so mote y thee.
 Withdrawe the anone and iouste with me.'
 Guy to him beganne to smyte
 And did him not spare bot a lite ;
 An highe he smote him in the shelde,
 That downe he felled him in the feelde.

905 and Duke Reyner
 of Saxony,

910

915

920

The hors by reyne he hath nome,
 And to the Duke therewith he is come.
 'Nowe here thy hors y take the ;
 Yf y haue nede, yelde it me.'

925 whose horse he
 returns to him.

- & wele he ȝalt him his while,
 As gode kniȝt wiȝ-ouen gile;
 I schal ȝou tel feir & wel
 Hou he it ȝald him eueridel. 930
- C. 627.** When þe douk *Otus* y-seye þis,
 To-ȝaines Gij he come, y-wis:
 'Sir kniȝt,' he seyde, 'y prey þe,
^{1 MS. *piname*} Tel me þi name¹ and whenne tow be.'
 ¶ Sir Gij answerde wel freliche, 935
 'Y schal þe tel ful blepeliche:
 Gij of Warwike men clepeþ me;
 Ich was y-born in þat cuntre.'
 þe douk Lowayn cam wiȝ þis,
 A gode spere in his hond, y-wis; 940
 To Gij he smot wiȝ gret hete,
 & Gij oȝain to him smite:
 To-gider so hard gun þai driue,
 þat her speres gan al to-riue.
 þai smiten togider hard & wel 945
 Wiȝ her swerdes of grounden stiel
 purch scheld & hauberk also:
 Strong fiȝt was bi-tven hem to.
 Wiȝ that come Herhaud priking;
 þe douk he met coming, 950
 & of his hors him hap y-feld
 Riȝt long streȝt in þe feld.
 Wiȝ þat come þe douke Gaudiner,
 & mett wiȝ sir Torold þer;
 Sir Torold smot him on þe scheld, 955
 þat he feld him in the feld;
 He semed kniȝt gode & hardi.
- C. 648.** Wiȝ þat come prikeing sir Urri;
 þan gan þe fiȝt to ben aferd;
 Of swiche ne haue ȝe nouȝt y-herd, 960
 No ich it nouȝt telle no miȝt,
 For long dueling, y ȝou pliȝt,

And he full weh quytte his while,
 As a good knyght shuld withoute gile;
 Sone ye may here euery dele
 How he him it yelde swithe wele. 930
 Whan the Duke Otes herde this,
 Ayenst Guy he come, ywis:

'Sir Knyght, telle thou me
 Of whennes thou art and what thy name bee.'
 And Guy answerd than boldely, 935

'I telle the nowe full truely:
 Guy of Warrewik men clepe me; [p. 30]
 I was borne in that Contree.'

The Duke of Louayne cometh with this
 And a good spere in his hande, ywis; 940

Guy fought also
 with the duke of
 Louvain,

To Guy he smote with grete hete,
 And he to him and wolde not lete:
 With grete dyntes they to-geder dryueth,
 That their launces all to-slyuereth.
 They smyte to-geder harde and wele 945
 With their swerdes of good steele.
 They thirle armes and sheldes also:
 Stronger fighte ther is betwene theim two.

THANNE Heraude of Arderñ forth gañ sprunge,
 And the Duke he mette in his comynge: 950

whom Herhaud
 unhorsed.

Farre of his hors he hath him felled
 All longestreight in the felde.
 To the Duke Gaudemer than he smote,
 And of his hors he felled him fote hote:

Torold fought
 with Gaudimer.

Weh he dooth as knyght hardy.
 With that cometh to him vry.
 Thanne beganne that fighte with swerde:
 Of suche ye ne haue bot seelde herde. 960

Urri dis-
 tinguished
 himself also.
 Much valour was
 displayed,

- No no clerk vnder sonne,
 MS. 112v. col. 1. þat þe soþe 3ou telle conne ; 965
 Bot al þe folk of þat cuntre
 Seyd þat Gij þe best miȝt be.
 & þat oþer day y-same
 Sir Gij wan þat ich game ;
 & þer-fore, on euerich a side,
 On him was leyd al þe pride. 970
 So opon þe þridde day
 Turnb. p. 32,
 l. 799. **C. 660.** þe kniȝtes tok her leue and went oway.
 ¶ Wip þis come þe douk prikeing,
 A gode kniȝt and wele doing.
 ‘Lordinges,’ he seyde, ‘herkenep to me : 975
 Ichil 3ou telle hou it schal be ;
 & who so þer-oȝain sey ouȝt,
 Of bateyl no þarf him feyl nouȝt.’
 þai seyden al couinliche,
 þe dome was 3ouen sikerliche ; 980
 þe gerfauk and þe gode stede,
 þe grehoundes schul haue to mede
 Gij of Warwike, þe noble kniȝt,
 For best nov doand in þis fiȝt.

- þus þe kniȝtes ben departed y-wis ;
 Sir Gij to jn y-comen is,
 & dede him vnarmi :
 Of turnament he was veri.
C. 679. ¶ Wip þat come a seriant prikeinde, 995
 Gentil he was & wele spekeinde ;
 To sir Gyes in he is y-come,
 & him he gret atte frome :

Bot the folke sey of that contree
That Guye euer the beste is he.

965

but by none more
than Guy.

And on morowe for the same
The pris he had of that game.
Guy is preised on euery side,
And on him is *tourned* all the pride.

970

On the third day

And, tho come the thirde daye,
That euery man shulde wende his weye,
There come the Duke Reyner priking,
That good knyght was and well doying.

[p. 31]

‘Lordynges,’ he seide, ‘vnderstonde me,
Yf y myssey, that it may amended bee.

975

This Girfauk and this stede,
Thise Greyhoundes shaft haue to mede

He that theim beste hath gete
Is Guy of Warrewik, take ye kepe.

Guy was declared
to have won the
prize.

And that therto withseith aught,
Of bataille ne may he faille naught.’

985

All they seide comenly,
‘Thy dome we graunte, sikirly.’

Than they cryde as was the lawe

That Guy the *presentez* shuld haue by sothe sawe. 990

Whan they were all went,

Guy to his Inne is come, *verament*,

And did him vnarme lightly;

For of the *turnement* he was wery.

With this cometh a sergeant ridyng

995 A sergeant

Slie and wise and wele speking;

To Guyes Inne he is come,

And to Guy he wente right soñe.

- 'Thou art y-chesen chef & pris
 Of al þis cuntre for soþe y-wis ;
 For þou hast y-won þis turnament,
 Y make þe here þis present
 Fram þe maiden Blancheflour, 1005
 þat is mi lordes douhter þemperour :
 þe gerfauk & þe stede also,
 & þe tvay grehoundes þer-to ;
 & 3ete hir loue wiþ þan,
 Bot þou haue a fairer leman. 1010
 Sche þat is þe tour wiþ-inne,
 To day þou miȝt hir loue winne.'
- C. 691.** **W**el curteysliche answerd sir Gij :
 'Sir,' he seyð, 'gramerci ;
 Ich vnder-fong þis present, 1015
 & þonke hir þat it hider sent ;
 Hir druerie ich vnder-fong,
 Hir kniȝt to [be] wiþouten wrong.
 Leue fere,' he seyð, 'herken to me,
 What þat y schal telle þe : 1020
 þis armes ichil the ȝiue,
 & make riche while þou liue ;
 & al þine feren þat be wiþ þe
 Riche ȝiftes schullen hauen of me,
 & do ich-il ȝou grete honour 1025
 For þat maidens loue Blauncheflour.'
- C. 703.** 'Gramerci, sir Gij,' seyð he ;
¹ MS. *ynouȝt*. 'For armes come y nouȝt¹ to þe,
 Ac to þe maiden ichil wende,
 & tel hir boþe ord & ende, 1030
 Blauncheflour, þat swete thing,
 Ichil hir tel gode tiding.'
- C. 709.** **þ**e seriant goþ & lete Gij pare,
 þat liueþ in ioie and nouȝt in care.
- Turub. p. 33,
 l. 825.
- MS. 112v. col. 2.
- Turub. p. 34,
 l. 851.

Courteisly Guy he grette :

'Sir Guy,' he seide, 'god the kepe : 1000

Thou art holde the best in this borough

And in aȝ this londe thurgh and thorough.

Thou hast wonne the turnement,

Therefore y bringe to the this present

In the Maideȝ behalve Blanchefloure, 1005

My lordes doughter the Emperoure :

This white Girfauk, the stede also, [p. 32]

Thise white Greyhoundes, that good bee bothe two.

Hir loue the she graunteth with aȝ than,

Bot if thou haue a fairer lemman,

Than she that is the toure withyȝne :

This daie thou may hir loue wyne.'

Fulȝ courteisly answerd Guy :

'Of this presentez moulte graunt mercy,

And thanke hir that theim hider sent :

Fulȝ gladly y resceiue hir present,

Hir knyght to bee withoute wronge :

I shaȝ hir duely vnderfonge.

My leue frende, nowe vnderstonde me :

Thou shaȝ doo as y sey the.

Thise armes y shaȝ the nowe yiue

And make the riche while thou lyue ;

And aȝ thy felawes that bee with the

Riche yiftes they shaȝ haue of me,

And doo you y shaȝ grete honour'

For the Maideȝ loue Blancheflour.'

'Grant mercy, sir Guy,' seide he ;

'For armes y come not to the,

And right to the maide y shaȝ wende

And telle hir worde and ende,

To Blancheflour', that swete thing,

And telle hir of the good tyding.'

THE YONGE maȝ gooth and Guy lefte there,
That is in ioye and not in kare.

brought it to
Guy's lodging

with Blanche-
flower's love.

Guy

offered rich
presents

1025 to the messengers,

but they declined
them.

1030

Tvay swaines Gij clepeþ him to, 1035

Anon he seyð to hem bo :

‘This present 3e schullen vnderfong,

& wende þer-wiþ into Inglond,

& present þer-wiþ bi mi word

Rohaut, mi kinde lord.’ 1040

C. 718. & when þai herd what he hem hete,

In her way þai dede hem skete,

& went þe[r]wiþ in-to Inglond,

& þerl Rohaut þer þai fond.

þe gerfauk and þe gode stede, 1045

¹ MS. originally
him.

þe tvai grehoundes wiþ hem¹ 3ede ;

þerl þai made þer-wiþ present,

þat sir Gij wan in turnament.

& anon þai him teld

Gij was þe best in þe feld, 1050

& þat he was best y-teld bi

Of al þe kniȝtes of Normandi.

C. 737. þerl þer-of wel glad he was,

& þonked god of þat gras ;

& Felice þe feir dede al-so,

When þe tiding come hir to ; 1060

Turnb. p. 35,
l. 877.

² *d* expunged after
þat.

And al his frendes eld and 3ing

Glad were of þat² tiding.

C. 743. Nov Gij wendeþ in-to fer lond,

More of auentours for to fond ;

MS. 113r. col. 1.

³ MS. originally
Speyine.

Forþ he went in-to Speyne,³ 1065

& after in-to Almeyne.

þer nas noiþer turnament no burdis,

þat Gij þer-of no wan þe priis.

He was out al þat 3er

In mani londes fer & ner, 1070

- Two sweynes Guy cleped him to, 1035
 To theim he seide and bade also, Guy sent his prize
 That they with that present³ shuld fonde [p. 33]
 Assone as they might in-to Englonde
 And presente therwith in his worde
 The Erle Rouhaude, his kynde lorde. 1040 to Earl Rohaut,
 Whan they herde what Guy theim bade,
 FuH redy thei made theim with hert glade.
 They wente than in-to Englonde :
 At Warrewik the Erle there they fonde.
 The White Girfauk and the stede, 1045 the jersfalcon,
the steed,
and two
greyhounds.
 The two Greyhoundes that by theim yede,
 To the Erle they made their present ;
 And that Guy it wanne at the turnement
 AH they haue the Erle telde,
 And that he was the best in the felde, 1050
 And that he was moste sette by
 Of aH the knyghtis in Normandy,
 And that the Emperroure doughter with aH than
 Hadde him chose to hir lemman).
WHANNE the Erle herde this, 1055
 FuH gladde he was therof, ywis,
 That Guy so moche preised was. The Earl,
 His fader thanked god of that cas :
 Felice the faire did also, Felice,
 Whan the tidinges were tolde hir to. 1060
 AH his frendes olde and yinge
 Were fuH gladde of that tidinge.
 Tho wente Guy in-to farrer londe
 Turnementis and ioustes for to fonde.
 In Almaigne and in Lombardie, 1065
 In Fraunce and in Normandie.
 Ther' was noo turnement, ywis, [p. 34] After Guy had
thus won renown
in many lands,
 Bot he was therat and had the pris.
 He was oute more than a yere :
 Thurgh aH londes men preised him there 1070

And best is teld vnder sunne,
& mest frendes haþ y-wonne.

þan seyð Herhaud to sir Gij 1075
(His maister he was & kniȝt hardi) :

‘In-to Ingland we schul nov go,
So wele so we may it do,
For we han ouer al y-be,
þe pris y-wonne in euerich cuntre.’ 1080

Gij seyð, ‘maister, y grant wel ;
At þi wil be it eueridel.’

‘Now we han ben her & tar,
þe pris y-wonne euer ay-war ;
C. 756. To king Apelston þou schalt aqueynt þe 1085
Of Ingland þat is so fre,
& wiþ þe barouns also,
So wele þou may it nov do.

Tarub. p. 36,
l. 903.

¶ Gij seyð, ‘tomorwe, when it is day,
Wende we wil in our way.’

& when þe day is y-come,
In her way þai ben y-nome ;
Ouer se þai gan wende 1095

C. 765. In Ingland þai gun lende.
Anon þai com to king Athelston,
Wel fair he hem vnder-fenge anon ;
Wiþ erls & barouns aqueynt him dede
þat riche ȝiftes him bede. 1100

Nov is Gij to Warwike fare ;
þerl Rohaut he fīnt þare.
He welcomed him & his fere,
For he was him leue & dere,
& kist him wel sweteliche, 1105
& of his present þonked him miche.

And helde him the best vnder sonne.
 Many a good frende he had there wonne.
 To ¹ ayene he is come
 And with his good hooste his Inne nome.

[¹ Blank space
left in MS.]

‘**S**IR,’ QUOTH heraude to Guy
 (His maister he was, a Knyght hardy),

1075 Herhaud advised
him

‘To Englonde now we wol we goo :

to return home.

With worship we may it nowe doo ;

For we haue ouere all bee

And the pris wonne in euery contree.

1080

Guy consented,

To the kyng^t thou shalt acqueynte the

1085

Of Englonde, that is so free,

And to the Barons also

Wel bee-knowen thou shalt the doo.’

‘Maister,’ he seith, ‘y graunte wele,

After the that it bee euery dele ;

1090

And to-morowe whan it is daye,

We wol forthe on oure weye.’

Guy aroosse on morowe thoo,

and next morning
they set off.

And to the see they been goo :

Assone as they might, to shippe they wente,

1095

And in-to Englonde they come in the lente.

To kyng^t Athelston^d Guy is come,

In England King
Athelstan
welcomed him,

And with him he is aqueynted full sone,

With the Erles and Barons also,

And full riche yiftes they gaue him tho.

1100

To Warrewik than he is fare :

[p. 35]

The Erle Rohaude he fonde there,

That faire vnderfonge him and his feere ;

so did Earl
Rohant,

For he was him bothe leef and dere.

He kissed him full swetely

1105

And of his present^t thanked him hertly.

To his leman he is y-come,
& euen forþ hir-self sche hap him nome.

Glad was his fader for him,
Sabin his moder & al his kin,
& al þe folk of þat cuntre
Bliþe were þai miȝt him se.

C. 777. ¶ To Felice þan sir Gij is go ; 1115
MS. 113r. col. 2.

Sweteliche he seyð hir to :
'Leman,' he seyð, 'wele þou be,
Mi liif ichaue for loue of þe ;

Turnb. p. 37, 1. 927. Ded ich were ȝif þou nere, 1120
Mi bodi destrud and leyð on bere.

When þou þi wille hadde seyð to me,
Armes y fenge for loue of [þe] ;
& when ich hadde armes take,
þou seyð þou noldest me for-sake,

þou noldest þi loue werne to me ;
& nov ich am her comen to þe :
Dere leman, y prey þe
þi wille þatow tel to me.'

1130

C. 793. **F**elice answerd swiþe an heye,
'No rape þe nouȝt so, sir Gij ;

ȝete nartow nouȝt y-preysed so,
þat me ne may finde oþer mo ;

Orped þou art and of grete miȝt, 1135
Gode kniȝt & ardi in fiȝt :

& ȝif ich þe hadde mi loue y-ȝeue,
To welden it while þat y liue,

Sleuþe þe schuld ouercome :

Namore wostow of armes loue, 1140

No comen in turnament no in fiȝt.

So amorous þou were anon riȝt.

To his lemman he is weH-cōme,
 And him to kisse she maketh hir bowne.
 The Erle proferd him siluer and golde,
 And noothing therof take he wolde.
 FuH gladde is his fader of him
 And his moder and aH his kynne,
 And aH the folke of that Contree
 Were gladde him for to see.

Felice,

1110

and his father
and mother.

ON A DAYE he is to Felice goo,
 And fuH louyngly he seith hir too :

1115 Guy visited
Felice,

‘I am cōme as thou may see.
 My lif y haue, lemman, thurgh thee :
 Ne were thou, lemman, dede y were,
 My body destroyed and leide on bere.
 Armes y toke for loue of the,
 Thoo thy wille thou tolde me,
 That, whan y had armes take,
 Thou woldest not than me for-sake.
 And thou hast herde me praised bee
 In many astraunge contree :
 Thy loue shuld not me bee werned,
 For y haue it, me thinketh, ayerned.
 Sweting, nowe y am cōme to the,
 Thy wille therof thou telle me.’

1120

and reminded her

1125

FELICE answerd swithe oH highe,
 And iaped not with sir Guye :

[p. 36]

‘Yet art thou not praised so,
 Bot y kanne fynde suche other moo.
 Stronge thou art and of grete mighte,
 Good and hardy and kene in fighte :
 And if y the had my loue yiue,
 And wille it the whiles y liue,
 Sleuthe wolde the so ouerecoH,
 That thou woldest nomore armes doon),
 Ne cōme in turnement nor in fighte.
 So ameraus thou wolde bee anone righte.

1130

of her promise.

1135

But Felice
protested

1140

that she would
not marry him,

- Y schuld misdo, so þenkeþ me,
 & miche agilt ozaines te,
 & ich þi manschip schuld schone, 1145
 Wit¹ me euer more to wone.
C. 807. Gij, quod Felice, 'forhele y nille,
 Turnb. p. 38, l. 955. Ac al þe soþe ichil þe telle :
 þou art me leuest of oþer alle,
 For þi 'leman' ichil the calle ; 1150
 Ac mi loue no schaltow haue
 For noþing þatow may craue,
 Er þou perles holden be
 & best doand in þis cuntre,
 þat nowhar bi lond no w[e]ter 1155
 No be founde þi beter ;
 & when þou art hold best doinde
 In armes þat animan mai finde,
 þat vnder heuen þi beter no be,
 Mi loue ichil þan graunzi þe.' 1160
- C. 821.** MS. 113v. col. 1. **W**hen Gij herd Felice speke so, 1165
 Wel depe he gan to sike þo :
 'Now ichot, þou scornest me :
 Swiche answer ichaue of þe,
 þat y schuld be þe best y-teld,
 þat be fiztand wiþ spere & scheid. 1170
 Swiche no miȝt y neuer werþe
 To be þe best on þis erpe² ;
 Into oþer cuntres ichil go,
 For þi loue to wirche me wo.
 For dout of deþ nil y nouȝt fle : 1175
 ȝif y dye, it is for þe.'
- C. 831.** Sir Gij of hir toke his leue,
 Turnb. p. 39, l. 981. & kist hir wiþ wepeand eye.

¹ t over an
 erasure.

² on þis erpe on
 an erasure.

I shuld misdoo, as thinketh me,
And gretly offende ayenst the.

though

Guy,' quoth she, 'concele y nelle,
Bot aH the sothe y shaH the telle :
Thou art me leeuest of other alle,
And my lemman y shaH the calle ;
Bot my loue thou shalt not haue
For noo thing that thou kan craue,
Vnto tyme thou so perilous holde bee
And best doynge in euery Contree,
That neither by londe nor by water
Bee founde in any wise thy better ;
And whan thou art holde best doynge
In armes that man may fynde,
That vnder heuen thy better ne bee,
My loue than y shaH graunte the,
For to doo with me thi wille
Eerly and late, loude and stille.

he was so dear
to her,

1150

till he was
thought

1155

the best knight
under heaven.

In other wise, how so it goo, [p. 37]
My loue ne shaH thou haue ell's neuere the moo.'

1160

WHANNE Guy herde Felice speke so,
FuH depe he ganne sighe tho :

1165

Guy felt inclined
to despair,

'Now wote y weH, thou skornest me,
Whan y suche answer haue of the,
That y shuld the best bee in felde
In fighting with spere and shelde ;
And so good might y neuere worthe
To bee the best vpon the erthe ;

1170

And in-to straunge londe wende y shaH,
For thy loue to werke woo ouere aH.
For doubte of deH y woH not flee :
If y dye, it is for the.'

but determined to
go abroad again
to risk new perils.

1175

Guy of hir toke his leue on hie,
And kissed hir with weping yie.

He took leave
of her,

Unto his in he goþ snelle ;
 þer nil he no lenger duelle. 1180
 To þerl he wil gon,
 & tak his leue sone anon.

C. 835. **G**ij him com to court þore,
 & aliȝt atte halle dore ;
 & to þerl he went þo, 1185
 & schewed him wat he wald do.
 ‘Sir erl,’ quod Gij, ‘y bid þe,
 Leue to wende ȝif þou me.
 Ouer þe se ichil now wende ;
 God to gode hauen me sende ! 1190
 Time it is þat ich fond
 To winne priis in vncouþe lond ;
 Al þe glader ȝe mow be
 ȝif we of armes preised be.
 & ȝif þou hast folk of grete miȝt, 1195
 It is te gret worþschip, y pliȝt,
 For al þe more men schal þe dout
 Wiþ-in þi lond & eke wiþ-out.’

C. 847. ¶ ‘Sir Gij,’ quod þerl þo,
 ‘Faileþ þe out þat y mai do ? 1200
 Gold oþer siluer, oþer heye stede ?
 To passe þe se hastow no nede.
 Sir Gij,’ he seyde, ‘lete ben al þis,
 Anouȝ þe worþ þat þe nede is ;
 & to pleyn vnder þe linde, 1205
 þe hert to chacen and þe hinde :
 Of al þinges þou schalt haue plente.
 Bileue at hom, sir Gi, wiþ me.

M.S. 113v. col. 2. We schul wende boþe y-fere
 To play bi wode & bi riuer ; 1210
 Al bi times þou miȝt wende ;

þe *pende* added
 over the line.

ȝote no hastow ben here a moneþ to þende¹.
 ¶ ‘Miche þank, sir,’ quod Gij þo ;
 ‘For soþe so no may [y] nouȝt do.’

- To his Inne he gooth, as y you telle,
 And there he doth not longe duelle. 1180
 To the Erle he gan goon
 To take of him his leue anon.
 Nowe is Guy to Courte come
 To take his leue all and some.
 To the Erle Rohaude he yede thoo, 1185 and of Earl
 And tolde him what he wolde doo. Rohaut,
 'Sir Erle,' quoth Guy, 'y pray the,
 Leue to wende that thou yiue me. asking his leave
 God to good hauen me sende : again.
 Ouer the see y shalt wende. 1190
 Tyme it is that y fonde
 To wyne pris in straunge londe ;
 For all the gladder ye may bee [p. 38]
 That men of armes doo preise me ;
 For if ye haue folke of grete mighte, 1195
 It is to you worship, y you plighte ;
 For the more men wolt the doubte
 Within thy londe and withoute.'
 'SIR GUY,' quoth the Erle tho,
 'Failleth the aught that y may doo, 1200 The Earl tried
 Golde or siluer or highe stede, hard
 To passe the see yf thou haue nede ?
 Sir Guy, lete bee all this,
 And thou shalt haue all that nedefull is,
 To chase the herte and the hynde, 1205 to persuaide Guy
 And to pley vnder the wode lynde : to remain at
 Of all thinge thou shalt haue plentee, home,
 And abide at home, y bidde the.
 We shalt wende bothe in feere
 And pleye vs in wode and by Ryueer. 1210
 All by tymes thou may ouere wende :
 Thou hast not sojourned a moneth to the ende.'
 'Mikel thanke,' quoth Guy tho ; but unsucces-
 'For sothe so may it not goo.' fully.

His leue he toke wiþ-uten more ; 1215
þerl it of þouȝt swiþe sore.

C. 865. He goþ him to his fader þo,
þat for his wending was ful wo :
'Gon, fader,' quod he, 'ich-ille ;
For noþing leten y nille ; 1220
ȝif me leue, icham al ȝare
Ouer þe se for to fare,
To winne pris and los al-so,
So ȝong man schal in ȝouþe do.
Long to bileuen in þis cunt[r]e 1225
Nis it nouȝt worþ for me ;
For ȝong man þat is miȝti
In his ȝouþe schal fondi,
So þat men may him in erþe preyse,
And in eld liue in mirþe & ayse. 1230
þer-whiles icham ȝong & liȝt,
Los ichil winne bi mi miȝt.'

Turnb. p. 41,
l. 1033.

C. 879. **L**eue sone,' he seyð, 'leue þat þouȝt :
Bi mi wil schaltow wende nouȝt.
þou schalt bileue here wiþ me ; 1235
Al þe bliþer we wille be.'
'Leue sone,' his moder him sede,
'þou do bi þi faders rede :
Soiourne wiþ ous to ȝer mo,
Y rede þe, sone, þat it be so. 1240
Anoper ȝer þou miȝt ouer fare.
Bot þou bileue, y dye for care,
For we ne haue sonis no mo :
ȝif we þe schul now for-go,
Glad no worþ we neuer mo, 1245
For sorwe schul ous¹ selue slo.'
¶ Gij answerd wiþ þat speche,
'Fader, god y þe biteche,
& mi leue moder al-so ;
For hastiliche ichil nov go.' 1250

¹ o of ous all but
illegible.

His leue he toke withoute more ; 1215
 The erle it forthoughte full sore.
 He gooth him to his fader thoo,
 That for his goyng^t was full woo :
 'Fader,' quoth Guy, 'goo y wille :
 For noo thing^t y wo^l lette by skille ; 1220
 Yiue me leue, y wo^l not spare
 Ouer the See for to fare,
 To wynne pris and losse also, [p. 39]
 As a yonge maⁿ in his yough^te shuld doo.
 To abide longe in this contree 1225
 It is not worthe noo thing^t to me ;
 For a yonge maⁿ that is migh^ti
 In his youthe shuld make bowne and redy,
 So that in age he may bee preised,
 And so to honour^t to bee arreised. 1230
 Whiles that y am yonge and lig^hte,
 My name y sha^ll encrease by my migh^te.'
 'L EEF soⁿe,' he seide, 'lete bee that thoughte: His father,
 Yet sha^ll thou wende nough^te.
 Thou shalt abide here with me ; 1235
 Ah the gladder y may bee.'
 'Leef soⁿe,' his moder him seide, and mother, both
 'Doo by thy faders rede :
 Abide with vs here to yere mo,
 I rede the, soⁿe, thou so doo. 1240
 Another yere thou may ouere fare.
 And bot thou doo thus, y dye for care,
 For we ne haue soⁿes moo :
 And yf we shuld nowe the forgoe,
 Gladde ne shuld we neuere bee, 1245
 Bot for sorowe oure self slee.'
 Guy answerd with that speche, without success.
 'Fader, god y you betече,
 And my moder y doo also ;
 For hastely y wo^l goo.' 1250

C. 899. **G**ij forþ goþ, & þai bileue þare,
þat for hym hadde miche care.

MS. 114r. col. 1. To þe se he is y-come,
Gode winde he hæp atte frome.

Turnb. p. 42,
l. 1059. Y-comen he is in-to Normundye, 1255
Kniȝtschip he schewed on hye.

þennes he went in-to Speyne ;
Nis turnament non in-to Almeyne,
þat Gij no hæp þer-at y-be, 1260
& michel y-preised so is he.

þennes to Lombardye he went ;
þer ben þe iustes & þe turnament,
þer he dede him preyse miche,
þe Lombardes him loued inliche ;
He was large, curteys, & fre : 1265

C. 918. Of miche miȝt so was he.

¹ MS. *astounde* **O**f an vnsele y may ȝou telle,
& ȝe wil a stounde¹ duelle :

As he cam fram a turnament
þat was biside Bonevent, 1270
In þe bodi wounded he was :

² The second *e* of *greued* over the line.

³ MS. *of toun*.

þat sore him greued² no wonder it nas.
¶ þan bithouȝt him þe douk Otoun,³
þat vnwrast was, & feloun,
þat he wald ben awreke þat day 1275

Of Gij of Warwike, ȝif he may ;
For he him wounded in a turnament,
As ichaue herd telle verrament ;
þerfore Gij him was swiþe loþ,
& wel depe he swore his oþ 1280

Turnb. p. 43,
l. 1085. þat he of him awreke wald be
Er þan he wende out of þat cuntre.

C. 927. **W**hen þe douke Otus y-seye þat cas,
þat Gij so sore wounded was, 1285
þerl Lambard he cleped to him
(A kniȝt he was stout & grim),

Guy gooth forth and theim lefte there,
That for him in grete sorowe were.

To the see he is come,

[p. 40]

Guy crossed the
sea again,

Good wynde he hath nome.

Come he is in-to Normandye,

1255

showed his
prowess in
Normandy,

Knyghthode he secheth fuH hastily.

Fro thense he wente him in-to Ispaigne

Spain,

And so fro thense in-to Almaigne.

Germany,

At euery turnement Guy hath bee,

And moche preised ouere aH is he.

1260

and Lombardy,

Fro thense to lombardie he is wente :

Ther' were ioustes and turnemente,

There they did him preise myche,

winning much
love and praise.

The lombardes him loued in-liche ;

For he was curteys, large and free,

1265

And of moche might and grete bountee.

NOWE OF a straunge case y shaH you telle,

Ye that wolH a while duelle,

That Guy befelH conyng' fro a turnement

But at a tourna-
ment near

That was withoute Boneuent :

1270

Benevento,

In the body he wounded was :

Guy was
wounded.

Sore it him greued, noo wonder nas.

That aspied weH the Duke Otoun,

Duke Otoun,

That was vntruste and feloun,

That he wolde bee a-wreke that daie

1275

On Guy of Warrewik, if he maye ;

For he him wounded at a tournement,

As y before tolde verraiment ;

Therfor' Guy was yet¹ him lothe,

who hated Guy,

And fuH depe he swore his othe

1280

¹ was struck out
after yet.

That he wolde on him wroken bee

Or he wente oute of that contree.

Whanne Duke Otes wiste that caas,

[p. 41]

saw his chance

That Guy so sore wounded was,

Than the Erle Lambard he clepid him to,

1285

and called Earl
Lambard

That good knyght was, and bade him goo

¹ looks like
fistene

& fiftene¹ kniztes in his compeynie,

þat were strong men and hardie.

On a dern stede he dede hem hide,

þer as Gij schuld cum ride ;

1290

C. 935. 'Lordinges,' þan seyð þe douk Otoun,²

² of toun MS.

'Under-stond to mi resoun :

Mine men 3e beþ & to me swore,

Omage 3e schul me þer-fore.

Mine hest 3e schul ful-fille,

1295

þat ich 3ou bid, wiþ gode wille.

MS. 114v. col. 2.

Me to wreken 3e schul go

Of a treytour þat is mi fo,

þat is y-comen vp mi lond

(Wer he þenkeþ to bring me an hond),

1300

Gij of Warwike þat wounded is

Wiþ a swerd þurch þe bodi y-wis.

On þe halidom 3e schul me sweri :

In þe forest of Pleyns þat is so miri,

³ & þer MS.

þer³ 3e schul 3ou al hide,

1305

þer Gij of Warwike schal cum ride :

Turnb. p. 44,
l. 1111.

His bodi oliue 3e schul me bring,

And slen his feren eld & 3ing.

Y schal him in mi prisoun do ;

Out no comeþ he neuer mo.

1310

⁴ and *wo* indis-
tinct, but perfectly
certain.

Wiþ sorwe and wo⁴ he schal þer ende :

C. 956. þennes no schal he neuer wende.'

'Sir,' þai seyð, 'we schul go,

S & al þine hest we schul do.'

þai dede hem arme swiþe wel

1315

Boþe in iren & in stiel ;

Vnto þe pas þai wenten snelle,

& þer þai houed swiþe stille,

As Gij schuld cum sone.

No wist he nouȝt of þat tresone,

1320

No of þat sorwe neuer thè mo,

þat him was comand to ;

With .xv. knyghtes stalworthe,
 That euerich was his armes worthe. and 15 knights,
 In a priue stede he did him hyde,
 Ther' Guye of Warrewik shuld come ride. 1290
 'Lordinges,' seide the Duke Otoun,
 'Vnderstonde, sires, to my Reesoun :
 My men ye bee all to me swore,
 Holde ye shull with me therefore.
 Myñ heste doo ye shañ, 1295
 That y to you now telle wolñ.
 Me to awreke ye shull goo
 On a traytour that is my foo,
 That is come in-to my londe
 (Werre he me thinketh to werke with honde), 1300
 Guy of Warrewik that wounded is
 With a swerde thurgh the body ywis.
 On the halidome ye shull swere
 That in the forest that is full neere,
 There ye shull you all huyde : 1305
 As Guy of Warrewik shañ come ride,
 His body on lyue ye shañ me bringe,
 Slee his felawes olde and yinge.
 I shañ him doo in my prison ;
 Ne shañ he neuere come to Raumpson. 1310
 With sorowe and woo he shañ ende :
 Ne shañ he neuere thense wende.'
 'Sir,' quoth they, 'we wolñ goo, [p. 42]
 All thy commaundement for to doo.'
 They doo theim arme swithe wele 1315
 Bothe in yreñ and in stele.
 To their place they wende snelle,
 And houned there softe and stille,
 As Guy of Warrewik shuld come
 Not knowyng of that wicked treason, 1320
 Ne of the sorowe neuere the moo,
 That him was comyng to ; for the unsuspect-
ing Guy,

to lie in ambush

for Guy,
slay his followers,and bring Guy
alive.They lay in
ambush

For al his felawes þat gode were,
 Al he for-les hem þere ;
 & his owen lif he hadde for-lore, 1325
 No hadde goddes help ben bifore,
 þurch þe traitours þat were her fon,
 C. 961. þat kept hem þere for to slon.

N^{ow} comeþ Gij soft rideing
 Opon a mulet ambling. 1330
 His wounde him greueþ swiþe sore,
 & smert him euer þe lenger þe more.
 In pais he wende for to wende,
 Ac þe traitours Lombardes vnhende,
 þe helmes þai seyen briȝt schine, 1335
 þe stedes nyen, and togider whine.
 'God,' quod Gij, 'we ben y-nome !
 Al we be ded þurch tresone.'

Turnb. p. 45,
 l. 1137.

Sir Gij of þat mulet alizt,
 & asked his stede, his armes briȝt, 1340
 & seyde to his felawes snelle,
 'Dere we schul our deþ¹ selle.
 Our deþ is now al bispeke,
 Bot we ous manliche awreke ;
 Ich kepe him selue, seþþe it so is, 1345
 & ichil, while y liue, y-wis :
 So dere so y may, ich wille
 To þe treytours mi lif selle.'

MS. 114v. col. 1.

¹ looks like *ded*
 with the second *d*
 erased.

C. 985. ¶ 'Sir,' seyde Herhaud þo,
 'For godes loue hennes þou go. 1350
 For þine loue we schul her dye,
 & defende þis pas, y seye :
 Leuer ous were her-on be ded,
 þan þou wer ded in our ferred.'
 ¶ þan answerd Gij anon riȝt, 1355
 As gode kniȝt & ful of miȝt :
 'Ȝif ȝe dye, ichil² al-so ;
 Nil ich neuer fram ȝou go !'

² *ichil* MS.

- For aH his felawes that good were,
 Euerychoon he loste than there,
 And his owne lif had forlore, 1325
 Ne were goddis helpe before,
 Thurgh the traitours that were his foon,
 That kepte him for to slee anoon.
 Now cometh Guy softe riding
 Vpon a liteH mule ambling. 1330
 His wounde greued him full sore,
 And euere the lenger smerted the more.
 In pees he wened for to wende,
 As the traitours were redy him to shende.
 The helmes they sawe brighte shyne, 1335
 And anone after befelle theim pyne.
 ‘**A**LLAS,’ QUOTH Guy, ‘y am noHme !
 AH we been dede thurgh treasoune.’
 Guy of that Mule alighte,
 And on his stede lepte, and gan his armes righte, 1340
 And seide to his felawes aH :
 ‘ Full deere oure liffis we selle shaH.
 Oure detH is here as nowe, y speke, [p. 43]
 Bot we manly vs awreke.
 Eche helpe him self, nowe it thus is, 1345
 And y shaH doo what y may ywis :
 As dere as y may, y wolle
 To the traitours lombardes my lif selle.’
 Than seide heraude thoo :
 ‘ For goddis loue hense thou goo. 1350
 For thy loue we wolH dye,
 Or defende this passage trulye.’
- Than Guy answerd anone righte, 1355
 As a good knyght of mikeH might :
 ‘ Yf ye deye, y shaH also ;
 I wolH neuere fro you goo.’

who came riding
on a mule,

suffering much
from his wound.

Seeing their
hostile array,

he suspected
treason,

armed himself,

and exhorted his
companions

to sell their lives
dearly.

Herhaud conjured
him to consult his
own safety and
leave them,

but Guy would
not flinch

C. 937.
Turnb. p. 46,
l. 1163.

Wip þat come a Lombard ride,
A modi man & ful of pride. 1360
'Gij,' quod he, 'zeld þe anon!
3e ben ded now euerichon;
To þe douke we han trewþe plizt
To bring him þi bodi þis niȝt.'
With þat ich word wel smert 1365
Gij him smot vn-to þe hert;
No spard he for no drede,
þat ded he feld him in þe mede.
'Bi þe trewþe y schal mi leman zeld,
To day no schaltow þi trewþe held!' 1370
Anoþer Lombard he smot anon,
þurch þe bodi þe swerd gan gon:
'No þou, treytour, no schalt me lede
To þe douke that is ful of qued;
To his presoun no worþ y for þe brouȝt.' 1375
Herhaud smot anoþer and spared nouȝt
þurch þe bodi his swerd glod,
Ded he fel wiȝ-outen abod.

C. 1015. ¶ þan com Torald, a gode kniȝt,
Swiȝe gode & hardi in fiȝt; 1380
Wiȝ a Lombard þer he mett,
& so wele his strok he sett
þat his heued fram þe bodi flei;
He ȝede him laweliche neye.

Turnb. p. 47,
l. 1189.
MS. 114v. col. 2.

Wiȝ þat come Urri prikeinde 1385
(A better kniȝt no miȝt man finde),
A Lombard he smot þo,
þat þurch his bodi þe swerd gan go;
So he smot him, for soþ to say,
þat ded he feld him in þe way. 1390
Seþþe he seyd, 'þurch no toun
Schal ȝe ous lede to no prisoun.
Than miȝt men se¹ fiȝt aginne,
Heuedes cleue vnto þe chinne.

¹ *fl* expunged
before *se*.

WITH THAT comē a Lombard ride,
 As a man of grete pride. 1360 A Lombard who
called upon
 ‘Guy,’ quoth he, ‘yelde the anone,
 Or ye bee dede euerychone.
 To the Duke Otes y haue the pligh^{te},
 Thy body to bringe him anone righte.’
 The Lombard was hote withoute lette, 1365
 And Guy him hath with harme grette ;
 He ne spared for noo drede,
 That deed he felled him in the mede.
 ‘By the trouth,’ quoth Guy, ‘that y shaft my lemman yelde,
 Thou shalt not thy trouth to the Duke holde.’ 1370
 To another lombarde he smote anone, and so was
another.
 That thurgh the body his swerde gan gooie :
 ‘Nor thou, traitour, thou ne shaft me lede
 To thy Duke that is so full of quede,
 Nor to his prisoun for the bee broughte.’ [p. 44] 1375
 Heraude smote to another and spared noughte, Herhaut,
 That thurgh the swerde glode :
 Deed he felled him withoute bode.
 Than comē Toraude, a good knyghte : Torald,
 Swithe good he was in fighte. 1380
 With a lombarde he so mette,
 And so weh he his stroke besette,
 That the heed fro the body fleighe :
 He smote his shuldres alowe so neighe.
 With that comē Vrry priking 1385 and Urry
 (A better knyght might noman fynde),
 To a lombarde he smote so,
 That thurgh the body his swerde gan goo : all slew their
men.
 So he smote him, the sothe to sey,
 That deed he felled him in the wey ; 1390
 And than he seide : ‘thou ne Otoun
 Ne shaft vs bringe in-to your prisoun.’
 There might men see fighte begynne,
 Hedes clouen downe to the chynne. Fierce was the
fight.

- Euerich þat day þat Gij oftoker,
 Sone anon his liif forsoke. 1395
 Sum he smot opon þe hode,
 At þe girdel þe swerd astode ;
 And sum he smot þurch þe side,
 þat miȝt he neuer go no ride. 1400
 Was þer non that miȝt astond
 Dint þat come of Gyes hond.
 So miȝti strokes þer wer ȝiuen,
 þat strong schaftes al to-driuen ;¹
 No was þer non in þat ferrede 1405
 þat of his liif him miȝt adrede.
- C. 1633.** ¶ Wiþ þat come ride þerl Lambard,
 A sterne kniȝt and a Lombard ;
 Vrri anon he slouȝ þar,
 It opouȝt Gij þo he was war ; 1410
 Wiþ þerl Lambard he wald iusti,
 & awreke þe gode Vrri.
 Wiþ swiche hete he smot him to,
 His armour no was him worþ a slo ;
 þurch out his hert þe launce he bar, 1415
 Adoun he feld him ded riȝt þar.
 Wiþ þat him come forþ Hougoun,
 þat was þe doukes neve Otoun :
 A kniȝt he was of gret miȝt,
 Swiþe gode & hardi in fiȝt. 1420
 Torald² he haþ aqueld ;
 Herhaud anon þat biheld.
- ² *torlard* MS. When Herhaud³ y-seye þis,
 þat he doun fel & ded he is,
 For his deþ he was sori : 1425
 Him to awreke he haþ gret hy.
 Neuer ȝete so sori he no was,
 To-ward Hougoun he made a ras,
 Als a lyoun he heyed him fast,
 þat his prey wold haue on hast. 1430

¹ MS. *alto driuen*Turnb. p. 48,
l. 1245.² *torlard* MS.³ *her herhaud* MS.

MS. 115r. col. 1.

AH that Guy with his swerde toke, 1395
 Sone anone his lif forsoke.
 Some he smote vpon the hode,
 That at the girdelstede the swerde abode ;
 Some he smote thurgh the side,
 That they ne might neuere more goo nor ryde. 1400
 Was there noon that might stonde
 The dynte that come oute of his honde. Guy's dints were heavy.
 So mighti strokes ther' were yiue,
 That the stronge shaftes ah to-dryue.
 There was noon in that stede [p. 45] 1405
 Bot of his lif he was adredde.
 With that come ride the Erle Lambard, But Earl Lambard
 A sterne knyght and a Lombard ;
 Vrry he hath sleyne there, slew Urri,
 That forthoughte Guy whan he therof was ware : 1410
 With the Erle lambard he did iousty, but was at once
 To awreke the deth of good Vrry.
 With suche an hete he smote him to, slain by Guy.
 That ah his armes auailed him not a sloo ;
 Thurgh his herte the launce he bare, 1415
 And adown he felled him dede there.
 With that cometh forth hugon, Hugoun, nephew of Otoun,
 He was the Dukes Nieuue Otoun :
 Knyght he was of grete mighte,
 Swithe hardy and good in fighte. 1420
 Toraude there he hath felled, slew Torald,
 And to deth stiked him thurgh his sheelde.
 And whan heraude saw that cas,
 That Toraulde so foule sleyne was,
 For his deth he was sorye : 1425
 Him to awreke he doth him hye. but was in revenge
 Neuere so sory he was,
 Toward hugon he made a chas.

þurch þe body he him smot
 Wiþ gret strengþe, god ytot,
 þat biforn þe Lombardes alle
 Of his hors ded he gan falle.

C. 1053. ¶ When dan Gauter þat y-seye, 1435

Turnb. p. 49,
 l. 1241.

To Herhaud he stert wel an heye,
 And wiþ his swerd he smot him so
 þat his hauberk rent ato ;
 þurch his bodi þat swerd ȝede,
 Al þai wende þat he wer ded. 1440

¶ When Gij seye Herhaud y-feld,
 To-hewen his hauberk & his scheld
 (& of his hors feld he was,
 As ded man lay on þe gras ;
 He seye þe blod þat cam him fro), 1445
 Wonder him þouȝt, & seyde þo :

‘ þou lording, to þe y sigge,
 His deþ þou schalt wel sore abigge !
 So mot ich euer word speke,
 Mi maisters deþ ichil awreke, 1450
 & for a couward ich held þe :
 þou slouȝ him, & lete me be.

¹ MS. *sonne*.

Bi him þat made sonne & mone,
 þou schalt it wite swiþe sone,¹
 þat tow schalt it biȝelp nouȝt 1455
 þat he is to deþ y-brouȝt.’

¶ Gij wiþ spors smot þe stede,
 As a man þat hadde nede,
 þat fire vnder þe fet aros ;
 Nas þer non þat him agros. 1460

Turno. p. 50,
 l. 1237.

Wiþ al his miȝt he smot him to,
 Wel euen he clef his scheld þo,
 þurch his bodi þe swerd he þriste :
 þo at arst fiȝt him liste. 1465
 In þe sond he feld him doun,
 & bede him Cristes malisoun,

Thurgh the body he him smote
 With so grete strength, god it wote,
 That there before the Lombardes aȝ
 Of his hors he did him dede faȝ.
 Whan Danz Gauter that sighe
 (A knyght he was of herte highe),
 Ouere thwert¹ he smote to Heraude so
 That aȝ his hauberk he rende thoo;
 Thurgh heraudes body the swerde yede,
 Aȝ they wende he had bee dede.
 Whan Guy sawe heraude felde,
 To-hewe his hauberk and his shelde
 (And of his hors felled he was
 As a dede man vpon the gras),
 And sawe the blode that ranne him fro,
 Wonder he thoughte, and seide thoo:
 'Thou lordyng, to the y seye,
 His deth thou shalt fuȝ dere abeye!

smitten down by
 Herhaud.

1435 Don Gauter

[p. 46]

¹ MS. *thewert*.

1440

struck down
 Herhaud.

Guy seeing this
 disaster

1445

swore revenge,

And by him that made soȝne and mone,
 Thou shalt wite swithe sone
 That thou shalt it forgete nought
 That thou him hast to deth brought.
 Guy with spores smote his stede,
 As a man that had grete nede.

1455

fought like a
 madman,

Than with aȝ his mighte he smote him to,
 Fuȝ euen he karffe his herte in two.

and slew Don
 Gauter.

And ther' in grene he felled him downe,
 And bade him Cristes malesoun,

1465

For þat he wald Herhaud slen,
And lete him oliues ben.

C. 1067. ¶ Now is Gij¹ wel hard bifalle,
Y-lorn he haþ his felawes alle ; 1470
So sori he is, he not what to do,
He no haþ no wiȝt to bimen him to.

1 MS. repeats
is *gij*, but the
second is *gij* is
underdotted.
MS. 115r. col. 2. Bot þre Lombard[es] oliue þer nere,
Opon Gij hastiliche þai were ;
þe tvaȝ ben hole & sounde, 1475
þe þridde hadde þurch þe bodi a wounde.

¶ Gij þat on wiþ his swerd rauȝt,
His heued of fleye wiþ þat drauȝt.
þan com prikeing dan Gwissard,
A duhtti kniȝt and no couward. 1480

C. 1077. ¶ ‘Gij,’ quod he, ‘ȝeld now þe !
It no may no noþer be :
On þe erþe liþe þi scheld to-dreued,
Nouȝt o pece is wiþ oþer bileued,
2 MS. *alto hewe*. & þine helme is al to-hewe,² 1485
þine hauberk to-rent þat was newe ;
& wounded þou art, þou miȝt well se,
Long miȝt tow nouȝt oliues be.

Turnb. p. 51,
l. 1293. To day ichil ȝeld þe to þe douk Otoun,
& he þe schal do in his prisoun. 1490

C. 1089. Þan seyð Gij, ‘Gwichard, y nille :
To ȝeld me to þe is nouȝt mi wille,
þer-whiles ichaue mi swerd y-grounde,
& mi bodi wiþouten wounde.’
Gwichard smot Gij wiþ michel miȝt 1495
Opon þe helme þat schon so briȝt,
þat a quarter out fleye ;
þe kniȝt was hoþe queynt & sleye.
Opon his scholder þat swerd glod,
Of his hauberk it tok a pece broȝ ; 1500
God saued Gij þat he nas ded,
No for þat dint hadde no qued.

For that he did heraunde slee,
 And lete him on lyue bee.
Nowe is Guy full harde befallē,
 Loste he hath his felawes alle ; 1470
 So sory he is, he ne wote what to doo,
 And he¹ woteth to whom he may bemene hym to. ^{1 ne?}
 Bot thre of the Lombardes on lyue ther' were, ^{Three Lombards}
 That vpon Guy thoughte grete deere. ^{attack him at}
 Tweyn of them were hoole and sounde, [p. 47] 1475 ^{once.}
 The thridde thurgh the body had a wounde.
 Guy with his swerde that oon raughte,
 That his hede fleighe of with a draughte.
 With that come priking Dañ Guychard, ^{Don Gwichard}
 He was a full proude Lombarde. 1480
 'Guy,' he seide, 'yelde the to me !
 Thou seest it woH noon other bee. ^{summoned him}
 Añ thy meñ fro the been refte : ^{to surrender,}
 Sauf thy self is noon lefte,
 And thyn helme is aH to-hewe, 1485
 Thyn hauberk to-tore that was newe ;
 Wounded thou art, weH y see,
 That longe thou maist not alyue bee.
 This daie y shaH the bringe to Duke Otoun,
 And he the shaH doo in his prisoun.' 1490
 Than seide Guy, 'Guychard, y nelle ^{and on his refusal}
 Yelde me to Otes by my wille,
 While y haue my swerde grounde
 And my body stiffe to sitte astounde.'
 Guychard smote Guy with grete mighte 1495 ^{dealt him a}
 Vpon his helme that shone brighte, ^{terrible blow.}
 That a quarter away fleighe ;
 The knyght was stronge, hardy, and sleighe.
 Vpon the shoulder the swerde glode,
 Of the hauberk he toke an handbrode ; 1500
 God saued Guy that he was not dede,
 Ne for that stroke had noo quede. ^{God saved Guy}
^{then !}

C. 1103.

¹ The *i* of *smite*
added over the
line.

When Gij seye *him* so smite,¹
He was wroþ, 3e may wele wite;

Gwichard he wald fond to smite 1505

Wiþ his swerd þat wold wele bite;

To *him* he smot swiþe smert

² MS. *ney þe þe*. þurch þe bodi ful ney þe² hert:

þat gode swerd þurchim þrang,

Gwichard wald abide nouȝt lang; 1510

He turned his stede & gan to fle,

& Gij after *him*, bi mi leute.

Gode was þe ðors þat Gwichard rod on,

& so fast his stede gan gon,

Turnb. p. 52,
l. 1319.

þat Gij miȝt him nouȝt atake, 1515

þerfore he gan sorwe make.

MS. 115v. col. 1.

Gwichard fleye in his way

Toward Paui, so swiþe he may.

C. 1115. þe douk Otous fram hunting com,

& with him erles mani on; 1520

A kniȝt he seye cum prikeing,

His armes to-rent, his woundes bledeing.

þe douk Otous duelled aþrowe,

What he hadde Gwichard y-knowe:

Wele he semed man aferd, 1525

þat hard tiding hadde y-herd.

Wiþ þat is Gwichard to *him* come;

þe douke *him* oxed atte frome,

‘Gwichard, who haþ wretþed þe,

& where hastow in bateyle be? 1530

¶ Where is Gij? is he nome?

Liues or deþ[es] do *him* come.’

C. 1127. ‘Ichil ȝou sigge sikerly

So michel so y wot of Gij:

At a ford we him mett, 1535

& strongliche we him bisett,

Bot his bodi no nom we nouȝt,

Ac al to deþ we ben y-brouȝt;

To Guychard he fondeth to smyte,
And his swerde wolȝ aughȝte byte.

To him he striketh swithe smerte [p. 48] He routed
Thurgh the body weȝ nyghe the herte : Gwichard,
That good swerde in he thurste, wounde.i him
Guychard to abide noo lenger had luste, 1510 sore,
Bot tourned his hors and ganȝ to flee,
And Guy after him faste rode he.
Good was that hors that Guychard rode onȝ,
Guy wente ayene and lete him goonȝ : and sent him
For that he ne might him ouere-take, 1515 flying
Fulȝ grete sorowe Guy ganȝ make.

GUYCHARD fleyingȝ toke his wey toward Pavia.
Toward Pauȝ, as swithe as he may. Duke Otous,
The Duke Otes fro huntyngȝ coȝne, returning from
And with him Baroȝs and knyghtȝ's many oȝne. 1520 hunting,
A knyght he sawe coȝne prikingȝ
Withȝ armes rende, his woundes bledȝngȝ.
The Duke Otes duelled athrowe, recognized
Tyȝ Guychard he might knowe : Gwichard,
Him thoughte he semed a man aferde, 1525
Or that harde tidȝnges had herde.
Withȝ that is Guychard to theim coȝne ;
The Duke him asked fulȝ sone, and asked
'Sey, Guychard, who hath wrathed the ?
Where hast thou in bataille bee ? 1530
Where is Guy ? is he noȝne ? if Guy were taken.
Quyke or dede lete him to me coȝne.'
'I shaȝ you telle sikirly
As moche as y wote of Guy :
At a Forde we him mette, 1535
And strongly we himȝ besette.
And his body ne toke we noughtȝ : [p. 49]
Aȝ we been to detȝ broughtȝ ; Gwichard related
their disasters.

- Bot icham passed as 3e may se.
 'Mi nevou Hougoun, whar is he?' 1540
 Turnb. p. 53,
 1. 1345. Quod þe douk Otous, 'tel me raþe.'
 'Sir, in þe sond he liþe, & þat is scaþe.'
 ' & þerl Lambard, þat gode kniȝt?'
 'Ded he liþe in þat fiȝt.'
 When douk Otus herd þat, 1545
 Sori he was & no-þing glad :
 þat he haþ his folk for-lore,
 Sorweful man he was þerfore.
 Neyȝe his hert brast for mode,
¹ MS. *For sorwe* & for sorwe¹ ȝede ner wode, 1550
 When he wist his folk y-slawe,
² MS. *olue.* & þurch him brouȝt o liue² dawe.
C. 1143. **N**ow haþ Gij miche sorwe made,
 For his felawes he is vnglade.
 'Allas,' quod Gii, 'felawes dere ! 1555
 So wele doand kniȝtes ȝe were.
 Al to iuel it fel to me,
 Felice, þo y was sent to serue þe ;
 For þi loue, Felice, the feir may,
 þe flour of kniȝtes is sleyn þis day. 1560
 MS. 115v. col. 2. Ac for þou art a wiman,
 Y no can nouȝt blame þe for þan ;
 For þe last no worþ y nouȝt
 þat wimen han to gronde y-brouȝt.
 Ac alle oþer may bi me, 1565
 ȝif þai wil, y-warned be.
 Turnb. p. 54,
 1. 1371. Allas, Herhaud, mi dere frende,
 What þou were curteys & hende !
 Who schal me now help in fiȝt ?
 Neuer no was no better kniȝt. 1570
 In ich fiȝt wele halp thou me,
 Ful iuel ichaue y-ȝolden it þe ;
 For me þou hast þi liif forgon,
 Of þe no tit me neuer help non.

Bot y am eskaped as ye may see.'

'My Nieuue hugon, where is he?'

1540

Quoth the Duke Otes, 'telle thou me.'

'In the playne he lieth sleyn pardee.'

'And the Erle Lambard, the good knyght?'

'Deed he lieth in that fighte.'

WHANNE the Duke Otes herde that,
Full sory he was for that myshap,

1545 The Duke was
very sorry.

For his folke were so sleyne,

And thurgh Guy broughte fro lif to peyne.

For sorowe he waxe all-moste wode,

His herte to-berste wel nygh for mode.

1550

NOWE GUY maketh sorowe pitously,
And for his felawes wepeth gretly.

Guy lamented
for his fellows,

'Allas,' quoth Guy, 'felawes dere,

1555

So wel doynge knyghtis as ye were.

For thy loue, Felice, faire may,

Floure of knyghtis is sleyn this day.

who died for
Felice's sake.

1560

Nowe all other may by me,

1565

Yf they wol, warned bee.

Allas, heraude, my dere frende,

That were so curteys and so hende,

Who shall me helpe now in fighte?

In the worlde nas a better knyghte.

1570

In euery place full wel thou holpe me,

Euyll y haue it acyutte the;

For me thou hast thy lif forgoon,

Of the nomore helpe shall y haue noon.

But he was not
the last,
brought to harm
through a
woman.

How mai ich now fram þe wende? 1575

That y no mai dye þe hende!

Acursed be þe Lombardes ichon,

That slowen þe, and lete me gon!

& þat þai hadde y-slawe me,

& leten þe oliue be! 1580

Wharto lete þai me alon?'

þus sir Gij biment his mone.

C. 1179. ¶ 'Allas! allas! Rohaut, mi lord,

þat y no hadde leued þi word!

þan hadde y nouzt y-passed þe se, 1585

Ich hadde bileued at hom wiþ þe;

þus yuel nere me nouzt bifalle,

Y no hadde nouzt lorn min felawes alle.

Who so nil nouzt do bi his faders red,

Oft-sipes it falleþ him qued; 1590

For often ichaue herd it say,

¹ y illegible in MS. & y¹ me self it sigge may,

Turnb. p. 55,
l. 1397.

"Who þat nil nouzt leue his fader,

He schel leue his steffader."

What for his woundes þat strong bledeþ, 1595

What for his sorwe þat he ledeþ,

C. 1195. Al for sorwe & for wo

Adoun he fel aswon þo.

When he of swoning vp stod,

His feren he biheld wiþ drery mod; 1600

þan he lepe opon his stede,

To an ermitage he wold ride.

'Ermite,' quod he, 'com wiþ me;

þis hors of priis ȝiue y þe;

MS. 116r. col. 1. To bodis þou schalt in erþe graue, 1605

þat in þis forest ben y-slawe.'

'Blepeliche, sir,' þan seyð he;

'Wende bifore, y folwe þe.'

þe bodis him scheweþ sir Gij,

Boþe Toraud & sir Urry. 1610

A-cursed bee thise Lombardes echoone, [p. 50]
That slowe the, and lete me goode.'

He wished the
Lombards had
slain himself too.

He repented not
having hearkened
to Earl Rohaut

and his father.

What for his woundes that greuously bledeth, 1595

And what for sorowe that he fredeth,

Thus for sorowe and for woo

He swooned
away for woe.

Adowne he felle in swounyng¹ thloo.

Whan he of his swounyng¹ was awaked,

Vp he stode, his sorowe not slaked. 1600

Than he worthe vpon his stede,

Then he rode to a
hermit's cell,

And to an hermytage he gan him spede.

'Heremyte,' quoth Guy, 'come with me,

And this hors of pris y yiue to the.

Twoo bodies thou shalt in erthe graue, 1605

That in this forest their dethes haue.'

'Blithely, sir,' seide than he;

who promised to
bury

'Wende forthe, y shaH folowe the.'

Than the bodies him shewed Guy

Torauld and Urry.
¹ and added over
the line.

Of Toraulde and¹ of good Vrry. 1610

Seþþe he lepe opon his stede,
 Herhaud he wil wiþ him lede ;
 & so he dede sikerliche,
 & seþþe he was heled softliche,
 Ac no for þan Gij wend wele þere 1615
 þat Herhaud to deþ y-wounded were.

C. 1215. ¶ Now is Gij þennes y-fare ;
 For his felawes he haþ gret care.
 Herhaudes bodi wiþ him he bar,
 For he nold it nouzt lete þar. 1620
 He went him to an abbay
 þat was bisiden on the way.

Wiþ þe gode abbot þer he mett,
 & pitouseliche he him gret :
 'Sir abbot, he þe haue & weld, 1625
 þat made man wex in-to eld !

¹ The first *i* in
trinite added over
 the line.

& for þe loue of þe trinite,¹
 Ich þe bidde, par charite,
 þat þou þis bodi vnder-fo,
 & feir biry þou it do. 1630
 Ful wele y schal ȝeld it þe,
 & y mot haue hele, & liues be.'

'Who artow ?' seyð þe abbot, 'telle it me.'
 'Bleþeliche,' seyð Gij, 'bi mi leute :

C. 1237. A kniȝt icham of fer cuntre ; 1635

At a pas asailed wer we
 Wiþ strong þeues & mani outlawe,
 þat mine feren haue y-slawe ;
 & ich me-self am iuel y-wounde,

² MS. originally
leue non.

Y wene y liue no² stounde ; 1640
 Ac ȝif y liue, y ȝeld it þe,
 þe trauail þat tow dost for me.'
 þabbot answerd þo :

'Al þi wille it schal be do.'

Turnb. p. 57,
 l. 1449.

Now goþ Gij sore desmaid, 1645
 His woundes him han iuel afreyd.

Sithe he toke another stede,
 And Heraude with him he dooth lede,
 And rode him forthe aH softly :
 For him he wepeth fuH hertly,
 For he wende in sothe there
 That heraude to detli wounded were.

Herhaud's body
 Guy would take
 with himself.

1615

NOWE IS Guy forthe fare,
 And for his felawes maketh grete kare.
 Heraudes body with him he dooth bere
 Forto burye it eHs-where.

1620

He wente him to an Abbey
 That was ther' beside the highe wey.

He came to an
 abbey,

The Abbot Guy there he mette, [p. 51]

And fuH pitously he him grette :

'Sir Abbot,' he seide, 'god the blisse
 That man made for his owne, ywis :

1625

and begged the
 abbot

AH for loue of the Trynyte

I the beseche, for sainte Charite,

That thou this body here, loo,

In a faire burial thou hit doo.

1630

to bury Herhaud
 decently.

FuH weH y shaH it yelde the,

And yf y any while lyuyng' bee.'

'What art thou?' quoth the Abbot, 'telle me.'

'Blithely, sir': y sey the,

I am a knyght of farre Contree ;

1635

At a passage assailed were we

On hearing his
 tale,

Of stronge theeffis and outelawes,

That my felawes haue broughite to dethis dawes ;

And y meself haue many a wounde,

That y wene y shaH lyue noo stounde ;

1640

And if y lyue, y shaH yelde it the,

The trauaille that thou doost for me.'

To Guy answerd the Abbot tho :

the abbot agreed.

'AH thy wille, sir, shalbee doo.'

Nowe gooth Guy sore disnaide,

1645

Guy passed on in
 woe

His woundes haue him sore affraide.

- To an ermite he is y-go,
 þat he was ere aqueynted to ;
 MS. 116r. col. 2. His woundes *per* hele he dede
 Wipouten noise in that stede. 1650
- ¹ MS. of town. Miche he him dradde þe douk Otoun,¹
 So ful he was of tresoun.
- C. 1253. ¶ þabot of whom ich er of teld,
 On Herhaud he hadde gret rewþe to biheld ;
 He dede beren his body 1655
 Into a chamber to vnarmy.
 A monk of þe house biheld him,
 Bodi & heued & ich a lim.
 þilke monk sorgien was,
 þe vertu he knewe of mani a gras ; 1660
 þe wounde he biheld stedefastliche,
 þat in his body was so griseliche.
 Bi the wounde he seye y-wis
 þat to þe deþ wounded he nis,
 & seye þat he hym hele miȝt ; 1665
 & so he dede ful wele, y pliȝt.
- B**i þe moneþ ende at eue
 Gij was al hole & toke his leue
 From þe gode ermite, he went his way
- C. 1272. Toward Poile, also þe way lay. 1670
- Turnb. p. 58,
 l. 1475. To þe king he is icome
 þat him bede mani warisone,
 & miche tresour of siluer & of gold ;
 Ac Gij þerof non haue no wold.
 At ich plas & turnament 1675
- C. 1286. Gij hadde þe priis verrament.
 Was *per* non in al þat lond,
 þat his dent miȝt astond.
 þerfore men loued him swiþe miche,
 & vnder-fenge him bleþeliche ; 1680
 Alle gode men he was leue & dere,
 & wiþ hem alle pleye-fere.

To an heremyte he is goo,
 That he was acqueynted with or thoo ;
 His woundes hele there he dedde
 Withoute noyse in that stede ;
 For moche he dredde the Duke Otoun),
 Full of hatrede and of treasoun).

to a hermit,

who healed his
wounds.

1650

NOWE THE Abbot of wom y you telle, [p. 52]
 Of heraude hath grete reuthe with-aH ;

As for Herhand,

He lete bere his bodye

1655

In-to a Chambre to vnarme lightly ;
 And whan they had vnarmed him

A monke behelde euery lymme.

a monk saw that
his wounds were
not mortal,

The same monke a phisician was,

The mighte he knewe of many a gras.

1660

The woundes he behelde stedefastly,

That in the body were so grisely.

By the woundes he sawe ywis

That he to deth ne wounded is,

And that [he] him hele might ;

1665 and succeeded in
restoring him to
life.

And so he dooth sothely aflight.

In the meane tyme, ye may me leue,

Guy was heled and toke his leue

Of the good heremyte and wente his wey

Guy, now cured
also, passed into
Apulia,

Toward Poyle right as he may.

1670

To the king of Poyle he was welcome,

And that he knewe full sone.

whose king
welcomed him
greatly.

Of siluer he bade him and of golde,

And Guy therof nought take wolde.

At euery place in turnement

1675

Guy had the pris verament.

Was ther noon in aH the londe,

That Guyes dyntes might withstonde.

Therfor men loued him swithe,

And vnderfange him full blithe ;

1680

With aH good men he was leef and dere,

And therwith-aH their pleyfere.

Atte king he toke leue þo ;

Into Sessoyne he is ygo.

¶ Now he is comen to þe douk Reyner, 1685

þat him loued and held dere ;

He him vnder-feng wiþ worþschipe,

& dede him miche manschipe.

So long in þat cuntre bileued he is,

þat ouer alle oþer he is praised y-wis. 1690

Gij him biþouzt þo

þat he hadde þer y-nouȝ ydo :

MS. 116v. col. 1. Into Ingland he wald wende,

For to speke wiþ his frende ;

For it was ago fif ȝer 1695

C. 1290. þat he was last þer ;

Turnb. p. 59,
l. 1501.

In lasse while þan þat was

Might falle mani wonder cas.

þurch cuntres has he hadde y-went,

Quens and cuntas him haȝ of-sent, 1700

Ac non of hem he nold sikerliche

Bot Felice þat he loued so miche.

What for his miȝt and his godenisse,

For his nortour and his largesse,

þer nis kniȝt þat so miche preysed be 1705

Unto Antiage, þat riche cite.

¶ Gij him spedde niȝt & day ;

Into Ingland he toke þe way.

Of Gij ichil lete now,

And more after y schal tel ȝou ; 1710

Of Herhaud ichil telle astounde

þat wele is heled of his wounde.

When he feld him hole & fere,

Of þabot he tok his leue þer ;

His lord Gij he goȝ secheing 1715

Niȝt & day, him for to finde :

Toward Ingland he tok his way,

Crist him saue, so wele he may !

At the king' he toke his leue thoo ; [p. 53] Thence he passed
 In-to Cessoigne he is goo. into Saxony,
 He is come to the Duke Reyner, 1685 and was well
 That him loued and had full deer' ; received by Duke
 And he him fange full worshipfully, Reyner.
 And did him honour' full manly.
 So longe in the Contree ther' his duelling' is,
 That ouere all other he bereth the pris. 1690
 Guy him bethoughte thoo Once more
 That he had enough ther' doo :
 To Englonde he thoughte to wende, he resolved to
 For to speke with his frende ; return to
 For it was agoo .v. yere England. 1695
 That he was laste there ;
 In lasse stounde than that was
 Befalleth many a wonder cas.
 Thurgh the contrees as he hath wente,
 Quenes and Contasses for him hath sente, 1700
 And noon' he wolde sikirly
 Bot Felice that he loued so hertly.
 What for his miketh goodnesse,
 And for his might and large prowesse,
 Ther' nys knyght that so moche preised bee 1705 No knight was so
 Anone to Antioche, that good Citee. praised as he.
 Guy him spedde nyghte and daie,
 Toward Englund he toke his weye.
OFF GUY y shaH leue nowe,
 And a liteH while telle yow 1710
 Of heraud another stounde,
 How he was heled of his wounde. Herhaud also,
 Whanne he felte him-self hooH and quarte, [p. 54] now healed of his
 Of the Abbot he toke his leue and did departe ; wound,
 His lorde Guy he gooth seching' 1715
 Nighte and daye for him bidding,
 As Guy toward Englund toke his wey :
 Crist him saue that best may ! was making his
 way toward
 England.

- C. 1315.** At a pinacle bi þe se
 Gij seye a man of rewly ble 1720
 Go in pilgrims wede :
 þat was Herhaud, so god me spede !
 Turnb. p. 60, l. 1527. Gij him cleped wel swiþe to him,
 & seyð, 'wen comestow, pilgrim ?'
 'Sir,' he seyð, 'y com fram Lombardy, 1725
¹ Of hardschæpe ? Of hard y-schaped¹ for þe maistrie ;
- & lorn ichaue mi kinde lord :
 Gode kniȝt he was and bold. 1730
² MS. of town. Bitraid ous hadde þe douk Otoun² :
 Haue he Cristes malisoun !
 In þis wise ichil go,
 & bid for mi lord euer mo.'
 'Pilgrim, say me trowelich, 1735
 What hete þe man þou loued so miche ?'
 'Gij of Warwike was his name :
- C. 1336.** A kniȝt he was wiþ-outeȝ blame.'
 MS. 116v. col. 2. Wiþ þat he gan to sike sore,
 & wepe wiþ his eyzen þerfore ; 1740
 He him miȝt no lenge at-held.
 Gij him gan reweliche biheld :
 'Gode man,' quod Gij, 'for þi leute,
 What is þi name ? telle thou me.'
 'Herhaud of Ardern, bi mi leute, 1745
 Ich was y-born in þat cuntre ;
 Fif ȝer þus ichaue y-go
 To seche Gij y loued so.'
- C. 1343.** When Gij herd Herhaud speke,
 Him thouȝt his hert wald to-breke, 1750
 Turnb. p. 61, l. 1558. & in his armes he haþ him take,
 & gret ioie wiþ him gan make ;
 Him he kist wel mani siþe :
 For ioie he wepe, so was he bliþe.

- At a pynacle of the see
 He sawe a man sitte of ruly blee 1720
 In a pouere pilgrymēs wede, Guy met him by
 And that was heraude veraily in-dede. the sea in
 Anone Guy cleped to him, pilgrim's weeds,
 And seide, 'of whens art thou, pilgrym?' and learned
 'Sir,' he seide, 'fro Lombardie.' 1725 that he came from
 'What tydingis there?' quoth sir Guye. Lombardy,
 'By god,' quoth heraude, 'y kan nooñe;
 For many a daie it is gooñe
 That y loste my kynde lorde where he had lost
 That good knyght was, at a worde. 1730 his lord,
 Betraye vs did the Duke Otouñ : through the
 Haue he cristis malison! treachery of
 Therfor in this wise y shaft goo, Duke Otoun.
 And bidde for my lorde euer moo.
 'Sey me, pilgrym,' quoth Guy, 'truly, 1735
 What height that man that thou loued so hertly?'
 'Guy of Warrewik was his name : His lord's name
 A knyght he was withoute blame.' was Guy of
 With that he gan sighe sore : Warwick,
 He wepte and seide 'allas' euer more ; 1740
 He might it noo lenger kepe in holde.
 Guy full ruly he gan him beholde.
 'Good man,' quoth Guy, 'for thy leaute, [p. 55]
 What is thy name? telle thou me.'
 'Heraude of Ardern men clepe me 1745 and he himself
 In contrees there as y haue bee. Herhaud of
 .V. yere y haue thus goo Ardern.
 Seching my lorde Guy that y loued so.'
 Whan Guy herde heraude so speke,
 Of his teres he gan downe reke. 1750 Guy wept
 for joy.

- 'Hayl, Herhaud, maister min ! 1755
 No knowestow nouȝt norri þine ?
 'Certes,' quod Herhand, 'sir, nay :
 Ded he was for mani a day.'
 He him answerd, 'icham Gij !'
 'Sir,' quod Herhaud, 'merci !' 1760
 Soue so Herhaud vnder-stode
 þat it was Gij þat was so gode,
 For ioie he fel aswon anon ;
 Gij him in his armes nome.
 þer men miȝt se ioie make 1765
 Aiper kniȝt for oþer sake ;
 þer nas non þat it y-seye,
 þat he no wepe wiþ his eyȝe.
C. 1357. ¶ Adoun þai sett hem boþe þare,
 & aiper teld of oþeres care. 1770
 Sir Gij hap Herhaud y-teld
 Hou he him ladde out of þe feld,
 For to birry him at on abbay
 þat was bisiden on þe way.
^{1 n on erasure.} & seþpen¹ hap Herhaud y-teld 1775
 Hou his woundes weren y-heled,
 And þat mani lond he hadde ouergo,
 To seche his lord wiþ sorwe & wo.
 On hors þai lopen anon wiþ þis
 Vnto a cite wiþ ioie and blis ; 1780
 þan dede Gij Herhaud baþey
 & wiþ riche metes comforti.
 MS. 117r. col. 1. From þennes þai went to þe douk Miloun,
 And to him þai ben ful welcome ;
 Of her auentours þai teld him þere : 1785
 Hou þo was gode þat wicke was ere !
 þer þai maden her dueling
 Long anouȝ to her likeing.
C. 1383. ¶ At the douke þai token leue þo,
 For in-to Ingland þai wald go. 1790

Turnb. p. 62,
l. 1579.

'Allas, heraude, maister myn!
 Knowest not Guy, a felawe of thyn?'
 'Certes,' quoth heraude, 'sir, nay:
 Dede he was goon many a day.'
 And he answerd, 'y am Guy'
 'A, sir,' quoth heraude, 'mercy.'
 As sone as heraude vnderstode
 That he was Guy, the knyght goode,
 In swowe he felle adowne anone,
 And Guy in his armes him toke full sone.

1755 He told Herhaud
that he was Guy.

1760

They fell in each
other's arms and
wept.

Adowne they sette theim bothe there,
 And tolde eche other of their kare.
 Sir Guy hath heraude telde
 How he him bare oute of the felde,
 For to burye him at an Abbey
 That was there beside the highe wey.
 And than heraude he him telde
 How his woundes were heled,
 And thurgh how many londes he had goo
 Seching his lorde Guy with sorowe and woo.

1770

They sat down,
and told each
other all that had
befallen them.

1775

THEIR HORS they toke after this,

And rode to the next Citee ywis;
 There did Guy Heraude in herbes bathy, [p. 56]
 And with good metes him comforte hertly.
 Fro thens they wente to the Duke Mylone,
 To whom they bothe were welcōme.

1780

Guy took
Herhaud to Duke
Miloun.

Of their auentures they tolde there,
 And thanked good in many maner'.
 At the Duke they toke their leue thoo,
 Toward Englund they gan goo.

1785

They now
resolved to return
to England.

- þe douke hem wald lenger duelle,
 Ac it nas no-thing in her wille
 þer to bileue wiþ him no more,
 & þat biþouzt þe douke wel sore.
- ¹ MS. *seyntomer*. Toward Seynt Omer¹ he is y-go, 1795
 Herhaud þe gode wiþ him also ;
 Toward þe se þai token her way,
 So swiþe her hors hem bere may.
 When þai ben to toun y-come,
 Her in þai han sone y-nome. 1800
- C. 1395. To a windowe sir Gij is go,
 In-to þe strete he loked þo ;
 A palmer he seze cominge,
 Messaisliche bi þe strete walkinge. 1805
 To him haþ y-cleped sir Gij,
 & curteysliche gan him axi,
 ‘Weltow herberwe ? for it is niȝt ;
 For ferþer go þou no miȝt.’
 þe pilgrim answerd Gij,
 ‘Swete sir, gramerci !’ 1810
 Gij doþ him þan bileue,
 Ferþer he no may, for it was eue ;
 & sepþe he badde he schuld him say
 Sum soþ tidinges of þe way,
 Ȝif he herd neye oþer fer 1815
 Speken of batayle & of wer.
 ‘Ichil þe telle,’ he seyde, ‘fot hot
 Of al þe wer þat y wot :
 þerof is mani man aferd ;
 Of stronger sorwe no haue ȝe herd.’ 1820
 ¶ Gij seyde to him, ‘telle it me.’
 ‘For soþe y graunt,’ þan seyde he.
- C. 1413. Of Almaine þe riche emperour,
 Reyner, þat weldeþ þat anour,
 þe douke of Lowayn he² haþ bisett, 1825
 His men slain, & þat is vnnett ;

² he dotted before
 he.

- To seynt Omers is Guy come,
 And heraude with him all and some.
 Towarde the see they take their wey,
 As swithe as the hors theim bere may.
 When they to the Town were come,
 Their Inne they take full sone. 1795 But at St Omer,
 To a wyndowe is Guy goo,
 Into the strete he behelde thoo;
 A palmer he sawe comyng,
 Easely by the wey goyng.
 To him than cleped Guy, 1800
 And curteisly he gan him asky,
 'Wolt thou herburgh? for it is nyghte;
 For fa[r]t[h]er thou ne goo myghte.'
 The palmer answerd to Guy,
 'Sir,' quoth he, 'grauntmercy.' 1805
 To sitte downe Guy gaue him leue,
 Farther he ne might, it was nyghte eue.
 Than he praide him he wolde him sey
 Some tidingis, yf he kouthe, of the Contrey,
 Yf he herde nyghte or farre 1810
 Speke of bataille or of werre.'
 'I shaH telle,' quoth he, 'fote hote [p. 57]
 Of grete werre that y wote:
 Of a strenger y haue not herde;
 Therof is many a man ferde.' 1820
 Guy him seide, 'telle it me.'
 'Forsothe y graunte,' seide he.
 'Of Almaigne the Emperour,
 Reyner, that is of grete honour,
 The Duke of Louaigne hath bee-sette, 1825
 His Castellis destroyed withoute lette;

before putting to
sea,

Guy met a palmer,

invited him to
lodge with him,

and asked the
news of the way.

The palmer told
how
the Emperor of
Germany
had besieged
the Duke Segyn,

- MS. 117r. col. 2. For his nevou þat he slouȝ,
 Wiȝ wer he doȝ him wo anouȝ.
 Turnb. p. 64, Almost a ȝer it is ago,
 1. 1631. A turnament þer was y-do ; 1830
- C. 1425.** þe douke Segyn was þer þo,
 1 MS. *alowayn*. þat al Lowayn¹ bilongeȝ to,
 2 þe? Wiȝ his² kniȝtes of his lond,
 þider come her miȝt to fond.
 When þe turnament com to þende, 1835
 þe douke Segyn þennes wald wende :
 3 on erasure. Wiȝ þat come Sadok³ prikeing,
 þe douke Segyn vnder-secheing ;
 Wiȝ þe douke he hadde gret envie,
 For he was gode kniȝt for þe maistrie. 1840
 Sadok was y-hoten þat gome,
 Out of Mirabel he was y-come ;
 Of turnamens he was praised þo.
 His hauberk was of y-do ;
 In sengle armes he was y-diȝt. 1845
 Y-preysed he was for a gode kniȝt.
 To þe douke he seyð, 'wende tow þe ;
 Ones þou schalt justi wiȝ me,
 As kniȝt that wele alosed is ;
 Sone it worȝ sen y-wis.' 1850
- C. 1449.** ' **S**adok,' seyð Segyn, 'lete me be,
 Wiȝ gode loue y pray þe ;
 Wiȝ þe to justi haue y no wille,
 For y þe loue, and þat is skille,
 Turnb. p. 65, & to eken þat þou art mi lordes nevou : 1855
 1. 1657. His soster sone so artow ;
 Unworȝschip it wer to me
 ȝif y schuld iusti wiȝ þe.
 Ac go in, and arme þe snelle,
 And y com anon, y nil nouȝt duelle.' 1860
 Seyð Sadok, 'to arwe artow,
 When ones justi no darstow now.

For his Neuyeu that he slowe,
 He hath wroughte him moche woo nowe.
 All-moste a yere it is goo,
 At a turnement that is doo,
 The Duke Segwyn was ther' thoo,
 That all louaigne belongeth vnto,
 With all the knyghtes of his londe
 That thider come their' might to fonde.

1830 because the latter
 had slain the
 Emperor's
 nephew at a
 tournament.

Sadok, jealous of
 Segyn, had,

though unarmed,

desired to joust
 with him.

Segyn
 declining the
 combat,

- Now ichil þe for a couward held,
 & for a kniȝt vnwrast in feld :
 Bot þou wilt wiþ me justi, 1865
- ¹ MS. Ichil. Ichil¹ þe don a vilani.
 Hennes forward war þe fro me,
 þi dedliche fo ichil now be !'
- C. 1465.** Now Sadok smot to Segyn,
 MS. 117v. col. 1. & nothing he no spared him ; 1870
 Sadok toforn haþ him smete
 Of his scheld a quarter wiþ gret hete,
 þat he him wounded þurch þat arm,
 & he him wreþed for that harm ;
 So strong is þat strok y-ȝiue, 1875
 þat his helme is al to-driue.
 þe douke him wreþþed for þat smite,
 & was ful wroþ, ȝe mow wele wite,
 & þurch þe bodi he Sadok smot,
 þat ded he fel doun fot hot. 1880
- Turnb. p. 66,
 l. 1683. Wiþ þat he is out of the place y-went,
 For þer was ȝiuen a sorwe-ful dent.
 With him he dede þat bodi lede
 Unto an abbay, and biri it dede.
 þe douke Segin anon riȝt 1885
 Into the cite of Arrascoun him haþ y-diȝt :
 þer-in he holt him soiourninge
 For drede of þemperours cominge.
- C. 1497.** ¶ & when þemperour herd þis cas,
 þat his nevou y-slawe was, 1890
 Ouer al his lond his hest he bede
 To com to him for grete nede.
 & when þai al icomen beþ,
 þe douke of Lowayn he sege deþ ;
 No wil he neuer þennes come, 1895
 Er the douke be ded or nome.'
- C. 1531.** **W**hen þe pilgrim hadde al y-teld,
 Gij him lerkened & biheld ;

had been called
a coward,

and at once
attacked by
Sadok.

In the fight that
ensued

Sadok was slain.

And Segyn
withdrew to his
city Arrascoun.

Whan the Emperour herde that cas,
That his neyveu so slayne was,
Ouer aȝ his londe he bade his hooste
To come to him for his socour moste ;
And whan they aȝ assembled were
The Duke of Louaigne he besegeth there :
He ne wot thense goonde,
Til the Duke bee dede or noome.'

WHANNE the pilgrym had aȝ telde,
Guy him herkened and weȝ behelde.

The Emperor

1890

had gathered a
large army,

1895 and now besieged
the Duke.

- He stont & biþouȝt him ȝerne,
 Wheþer he forþ go oþer oȝain terne. 1900
 He seyð to Herhaud, 'what rede [3e] ?
 Sum gode *conseyl* ȝif þou me,
 ȝif we forþ in our wai go,
 Oþer to þe douke him socour to do.
 þat tow me redest, don y wille ; 1905
 þi *conseyl* forsake y nille.'
C. 1543. ¶ þan seyð Herhaud i-wis,
 Turnb. p. 67,
 l. 1709. ' Y ȝif *conseyl*, & gode it is ;
 Hem to help men schul spede
 þat to help han gret nede. 1910
 For los and priis þou miȝt þer winne,
 & manschip to þe & al þi kinne.'
 ' Sir Herhaud,' quod Gij þe gode,
 ' þilke lord þat died on rode
 MS. 117v. col. 2. þe blisse, & saue þe, 1915
 For gode *conseyl* ȝif[es]tow me.'
 Gij him graiþed & made him ȝare
¹ MS. *loreynie*. Into Loweyne¹ for to fare ;
 & wiþ him oþer fifti kniȝt,
 In feld þe best þat miȝt fiȝt. 1920
 Y-comen þai ben to Arascoun,
 To þe douke þai ben wel-com.
 In þe cite þai han her in y-take ;
 Mani wer bliþe for her sake.
C. 1569. Gij bi þe morwe aros þo, 1925
 Riȝt to chirche he is y-go :
 Matins & masse he herd þere,
 & seþþe went hom wiþ his fere.
 Bi þe strete he seye miche folk erne,
 Hemself to were þai most lerne. 1930
 Sir Gij to his ost sede,
 ' What is al þis ? so god þe rede,
 Bele ost,² y hidde, say þou me,
 What may al þis erning be ?'
 Turnb. p. 68,
 l. 1735.
² *ost* added over
 the line.

He bethoughte than full yerne,	[p. 58]	Guy
Yf he might goo forthe or ayene <i>tourne</i> .	1900	
Than seide he to Heraude, 'what rede ye?		
Good counsaile, sir, y pray the,		
Yf we in oure way forthe goo,		having asked
Or to the Duke wende and socour him doo.		
What thou me redest y doo shaß ;	1905	
Thy counsaile y woß not forsake at aß.'		
Than seide heraude y-wis,		
'I yiue the counsaile that good is ;		
Him to helpe ye shaß the better spede,		the advice of
And also therfor haue grete mede :	1910	Herhaud,
A good name and pris thou may ther' wyne,		
And worship to the and aß thy kynne.'		
'Sir heraude,' quoth Guy the good,		determined
'That lorde that deide on the Rood		
Blisse now and saue the,	1915	
For good counsaile thou yiuest me.'		
Guy him thanked and made him yare		to help the Duke,
Streighte to Louaigne for to fare,		
And with him other fifty knyghtes,		with 50 other
The beste that might bee in any fightes.	1920	knights.
Come they bee right to raumpsome,		He repaired to
To the Duke they bee full welcome.		Arascoun.
In the Citee they haue their' Innes take ;		
Gladde were many for their sake.		
Guy on the morowe aroosse thoo,	1925	The next
Right to Chirche he is goo.		morning,
Masse and matyñs he herde there		
And after to his Inne did fare.		after mass,

Guy to his hooste than seide, [p. 59]

'What is aß this? thou me rede.

Bele hooste, sey thou me,

learning that

What may aß this doynge bee?'

- 'Sir, ichil þe telle,' þan seyð he, 1935
 'No word nil ich lyȝe þe ;
 It is þemperours steward,
 A gode kniȝt and no coward
 (Anon to Speyne his better nis),
 & with him gret compeynie y-wis, 1940
 An hundred kniȝtes gode of ker,
 Her better no may wepen ber.
 þe cite þai han bisett :
 ȝif ani kniȝt be out y-mett,
 He no mai nouȝt passe vn-y-nome, 1945
 Oþer y-slayn atte frome.'
þan seyð Gij, 'lordinges, kniȝt,
 Oȝains hem we wil ous diȝt.'
 Sone þai ben in þe way y-don.
C. 1685. þe steward seþ hem anon : 1950
 þider-ward he him diȝt,
^{1 MS. *al*kniȝt.} Also a kniȝt¹ of gret miȝt.
 His armes þan he ginneþ riȝt,
 Oȝaines Gij he ritt apliȝt ;
 Anon to-gider þai gun smite, 1955
 Aiper spard oþer bot lite.
 Gij þe steward so hard smot,
 Of his stede he feld him fot hot ;
 þan he smot him wiþ his sward broun
 Turnb. p. 69,
 l. 1761. MS. 118r. A quarter of his helme adoun. 1960
 col. 1. þurch grete strengþe he him wan,
 & hom wiþ him ladde him þan.
C. 1631. When þe Almaines þat y-seye
 þat strong wer, and of fiȝt sleye,
 Her lord nomen in þat fiȝt, 1965
 Owai þai priked wiþ al her miȝt.
^{MS. *ascheld*.} þer was þirled mani a scheld,²
 Mani a kniȝt lay in þe feld ;
 Gij is oȝain went wel sone,
 & al his feren mid-y-done. 1970

- 'I shaH the telle,' seide he, 1935
 'And noo worde concele fro the ;
 This is the Emperours stywarde, the Emperor's
 That good knygh̃t is and noo cowarde Steward
 (Fro hense to Ispaigne his better nys),
 And with him grete companye ywis, 1940
 An hondred of knygh̃tes stronge,
 That noon better wepoñ doo fonge.
 Aȝ this Citee they haue besette : was before the
 It to destroye they woH not lette, town,
 Nor noo mañ eskape or noȝe 1945
 Or sleyne certaine full soȝe.
THANNE seide Guy, 'Lording's and knygh̃tis,
 Ayenst theim lete we dresse vs.'
 Anone they haue theim in wey doon. Guy sallied out,
 The Styward sawe theim anooñ : 1950
 Thiderwardes he him digh̃te,
 As a knygh̃te of grete migh̃te.
 His armes faste he gañ arraye, fought with the
 For formest Guy he thought assaye. Steward,
 To-geder anone they gañ smyte, 1955
 Eche spared other bot alyte.
 Guy first to him smote,
 That of his stede he felled him, god it wote,
 And thanne he smote him with a swerde browȝ, [p. 60]
 That a quarter of his helme he felled down. 1960
 So thurgh̃ grete strenght̃ ther' he [is] noȝe,
 And by treuthe his pligh̃te mañ is becoȝe. and took him
 Whan the Almaignes that seye prisoner.
 That stronge were and in figh̃te full sleye,
 That their' lorde was take in that figh̃te, 1965
 And¹ prikke away with aȝ their migh̃te.
 There was perced many a shelde,
 Or they were past aȝ the felde.
 Than Guy ayene wente full sone,
 And his felawes with him echone. 1970

¹ They?

- ¹ *Almaines* þe Lombardes¹ þai leggen fast opon,
 Nil þai spare neuer on.
 When þe kniȝtes of þat cite
 þis dede alle y-seyzen he,
 To army he[m] wel fast hy goþ, 1975
 Gij wel gode socour hij doþ ;
 & seþþen þai went forþ ariȝt,
 & Gij socourd ful wele apliȝt.
 Swiche strokes men miȝt þer se
 Togider smiten þo kniȝtes fre : 1980
 Boþe wiþ launce and wiþ sword
 Thai ȝiuen mani strokes herd.
 þer miȝt men se stray þe steden,
 So mani kniȝt cri & greden,
 þat wer þurch þe bodi wounde, 1985
 & ded fellen on þe grounde.
- Turnb. p. 79,
 l. 1787.
- ¶ 1357. ¶ Michel him peyned sir Gij,
 & Herhaud of Ardern sikerly :
 þis Almayns þai han ouercome,
 Sum y-slawe and sum y-nome. 1990
 þan sir Gij anon riȝt
 Into þe cite he him diȝt,
 Boþe he & his ferred :
 þe prisouns wiþ hem þai lede.
 Into þe cite þai ben y-gon, 1995
 & to her innes þai wenten ichon.
 Proude þai ben alle & some
 þat þe Almaines ben ouer-come,
 When þe douke yherd þis tidinge,
 For blis his hert bigan to springe, 2000
 þat Gii of Warwike was y-come
 & hadde þe steward y-nome.
- MS. 118r. col. 2. On his stede he lepe anon,
 To Gyes in he is y-gon ;
 ‘Gij,’ he seyde, ‘þou art welcome, 2005
 As of the world þe best gome.

The knights of
the city

rallied to Guy's
assistance,

and
an obstinate
battle ensued.

The Almaignes they haue ouere-come,
Some sleyne and some nome.

1990 The Germans
were vanquished.

There Guy and his felawes in that stede
Aȝ their' prisouners with theim lede.
To the Citee they wente anoon,
Eche to his Inne forth is goon.
Proude they were aȝ and some
That the Almaignes been ouere-come.
Whan the Duke herde that tydinge,
For ioye his herte gan to springe,
That Guy of Warrewik was come,
And the Styward had so nome.
On a good stede he lepe anone,
And to Guyes Inne he is goone.
'Guy,' he seide, 'thou art welcōme,
As in the worlde of aȝ *christen*¹ men
WARWICK.

1995 Guy returned to
the city
with many
prisoners.

2000 The Duke was
glad

of the news,

2005 and welcomed
Guy;
¹ MS. *xpen*).

- Tofor al oþer ichaue desired þe : 1905
 God y-thanked mot he be
 þat tow art come wiþ me to ben at nede,
 For now ich worþ þe more loued & drede
 Al of mi dedelich fo,
 þat al þis lond haþ brouzt in wo. 1910
 Sire & lord now ichil make þe
 Of mi court and of mi cite,
 Mine castels & mine londes þer-to eke ;
 & hennes forward y þe biseke
 þatow þe worþschipe vnder-fo, 1915
 & þine hest þerof þou do.
 Bi þi conseyll ichil nov don,
 For to greue mi¹ dedli fon.
 ¶ Wel curteysliche answerd Gij
 & seyð, 'sir, gramerci. 1920
 Bi mi miȝt ichil help þe
 On ich stede where þat y be.'
 þe steward he zelt him þan swiþe,
 Of whom þat he was glad & bliþe ;
 þurch him he wende acorded be 1925
 Of þemperour, his lord so fre.
 Bitvene hem þai tolden tale
 Of her gode frendes fale.
 Now sent Gij his sondes about, 1930
 Þeþe men wiþ-uten dout,
 To cuntres þat he haþ þurch-went.
 Grete frendes he haþ of-sent,
 Of barouns and of kniȝtes beld
 þe best þat miȝt wepen weld,
 Bi hundred and bi þousinde, 1935
 þat al wil ben his helpinde.
 þe castels and þe borwes þat lorn were,
 þe douke ozain wan hem þere
 þurch Gyes help & his ferrede,
 þat wele wer helpeand at nede, 1940

Turnb. p. 71,
l. 1813.

¹ originally þi, but
crossed out and
mi written over it
in the same hand.

C. 1700.

Turnb. p. 72,
l. 1839.

Ouer all other' y haue desired the : 1905
 God thanked mote he bee
 That thou art to me come, [p. 61]
 For nowe y drede nooman).

Lorde and sire y make the 1911 to whom he
 Of my toure and of my Citee, gave power
 My castellis and my londe therto eke ; over all his
 And henseforeward y the beseke dukedom.
 That the lordship thou haue also, 1915
 And all thy wille therewith doo ;
 For by thy counsaile y wol doon,
 For to greue my dedely foon).'
 Full curteisly than answerd Guy
 And seide, 'sir duke, graunt mercy. 1920 Guy thanked
 With my mighte y shaft helpe the him,
 In euery stede where that y bee.'
 Than the Styward he behelde swithe,
 Of whom he was full gladde and blithe ;
 Thurgh him he hopeth accorded bee 1925
 With the Emperour, his lorde free.
 Betwene them two they told the tale :
 Now yiue vs drinke wyne or ale.
 N owe sendeth Guy his sonde aboute and induced
 After good men withoute doubt 1930
 In-to Contrees that he hath thurgh-wente.
 Grete multitude he hath for-sente,
 Of knyghtes and barouns bolde
 The beste that wepon in hande may holde. hundreds and
 thousands

The Castell's and the townes that loste were, 1937
 The duke wanne ayene in that yere
 Thurgh Guyes helpe in that stede
 With his felawes that helped well at nede, of others to
 aid him
 in recovering
 his rights.

- Bi him & bi his *conseyl* also,
 þat þennes forward him treweþe wil do.
 ¶ When þemperour yherd þis,
 þat Gij to þe douke ycomen is,
 & þat he haþ his men ouercome, 1945
 Y-slawe & his steward nome,
 Wroþ & sori he is *þer*-fore,
 þat he haþ so his men forlore.
 To his barouns þan he sede :
 ‘Lordinges, what schal me to rede ? 1950
 Neuer no worþ ich glad no bliþe,
 Bot ich be awreken swiþe
 Of Segyn & Gij þat is our fo,
 þat mi folk haþ brouzt in wo.’
 ‘Sir,’ the douk Paui sede, 1955
 ‘Ther-of þarf þe haue no drede.
 Ar þe þridde day worþ to ende y-brouzt,
 þat play worþ wel dere about ;
 For of þine folk take we wille,
 þat gode ben & snelle, 1960
 þe best doand at swiche nede
 Wip scheld & spere armed on stede :
 Of Sessoine þe douke Reyner,
 & þe *constable* Gaudiner,
 & ich wip hem wil be, 1965
 & gret ferred lede wip me.
 To Arascoun we schul fare,
 3if we þe douk finde þare.
 Bot we þe treytours þe 3elde,
 We wil þatow in prisoun ous held. 1970
 ¶ þemperour answerd : ‘y-wis,
 A gode *conseyl* so is þis.
 Sir douk Reyner, þou schalt go,
 & þou, *constable*, al-so ;
 Al-so schal þe douke of Pauie 1975
 Wip his grete cheualrie

MS. 118v. col. 1.
C. 1700.

Turnb. p. 73,
l. 1865.

C. 1749.

By him and his counsaile also [p. 62]

Fro thense foreward woH him trouthe doo.

WHANNE the Emperour herde this, The Emperour,
That Guy of Warrewik with the duke is,

And that he hath his men ouerecome, 1945

His men sleyn and the Styward nome,

Wrothe and sory he was therfore,

wroth at his
Steward's defeat,

That he his men so hath lore.

To his baroñs than he seide :

summons a
council.

'How shaH we doo, and what is your' rede ? 1950

I shaH neuere bee gladde nor blithe,

Bot it bee awreke right swithe

Of Segwyn and of Guy also,

That my folke haue brought in woo ;'

And commaunded his dukes and baroñs aH

1955 By the advice of
Duke Otoun,

To bee redy in armes at euery caH.

It was determined
that Duke Reynet
with an army
should renew the
siege.

- To Arascoun, þat gode cite :
 þe douke & Gij bring to me.
 Who so to me bring hem to,
 Mi loue he schal haue for euer mo.' 1980
- 'Sir,' þai seyð, 'we willen go
 Al þine hest for to do.'
 Now hij han her way y-nome,
 To Arascoun þat ben y-come.
 When þai of þe cite wist hem þare, 1985
 Oȝaines hem þai diȝt hem ȝare ;
 Hastiliche to armes þai ben y-go,
 Kniztes and squiers wiþ hem also.
- Turnb. p. 74,
 l. 1891.
 [leaf 118v. col. 2]
¹ MS. *atredi*
- When þai wer al redi,¹
 & wele y-diȝt in her parti, 1990
 þe douke cleped Herhaud him to,
 & swetely seyð to him þo :
 'Sir Herhaud, þou schalt afong
 Four hundred kniztes wiȝt and strong
 (þou schalt ȝif þe first asaut 1995
 Opon þe Almaundes, sir Herhaud) ;
 & þou, sir Gij, an hundred to þe
 Of mi londe þat best be ;
 And ȝif þat Herhaud haue nede,
 Him to help þatow speðe, 2000
 & ichil com wiþouten delay
 Wiþ al þe strengþe þat y may.
 Togider wiþ hem we schul fiȝt,
 & hem ouer-com purch godes miȝt.
- C. 1792.
- As ichaue seyð, loke ye don, 2005
 & goþ and asaileþ hem anon.'
 Herhaud ginneþ hem to asaily.²
 þat fiȝt he wil comenci.
 Of þe douk Otus Herhaud is vnder-nome
 In þe alder first scheltrome ; 2010
 His fo he is euen forþ his miȝt,
 For he it haþ deserued purch riȝt.

² MS. originally
asaile.

- 'Sir,' quoth they, 'we wolȝ goo
 Aȝ thyn heste for to doo.'
 So they haue their w[ey]¹ noȝne,
 And to Ransoȝne they bee coȝne.
 Whan they of the Citee wiste them there,
 Ayenst theim they dressed in their' gere :
 Hastely to armes they bee goo,
 Knyght's and squiers bothe twoo ;
 And whan they were aȝ redy
 And well dighȝe on either party,
 The duke cleped herauȝe him to
 And swetely to him seide tho :
 'Sir herauȝe, thou shalt fonge
 Foure hundred of knyght's good and stronge
 (Thou shalt yiue the first assaute [p. 63]
 Vpon the Almaignes, sir' herauȝe) ;
 And thou, sir' Guy, an hundred to the
 Of aȝ my londe the best that bee,
 And if herauȝe haue nede,
 Him to helpe fast thou sped ;
 And y shaȝ coȝne withoute delaie
 With aȝ the strength that y maye :
 To-geder with theim we wolȝ fighȝe
 And theim ouere-coȝne with godd's mighte.'
 And as they seide so haue they doon,
 And doo theim assaille right anon.
 Herauȝe him gooth first to assaily,
 That fighȝe for to meyntayny.
 Of the duke Otes herauȝe is vndernoȝne
 In the vawarde, as it is aboute coȝne.
- 1981
¹ two letters illegible.
 They proceeded to Arascoun.
- 1985 The besieged prepared
- 1990
 for a valiant defence
 under Herhaud
- [p. 63] 1995
 and Guy.
- 2000
- 2005
 Herhaud attacked
 Duke Oτους,
- 2010

Turnb. p. 75,
l. 1917.

Herhaud him seyð, 'Otus of Paue,

C. 1804. Understond tow of þat felonie

þat tow in Lombardi ous dedest,

2015

When þou mi lord betreydest.

Wele we schul þer-of awreke be,

3if god wil, er þe sonne doun te.'

¶ Otus answerd, 'þou lext on me,

& þat y schal sone kiþe þe ;

2020

Gret scorn is here so y go,

Y warn þe icham þi fo.'

C. 1811. Togider þai smiten wiþ gode wille,

þat boþe of her hors adoun felle ;

2025

& after þai drouȝ her swerdes newe,

Wiþ gret envie to-gider þai hewe.

þe douk him wereþ miȝtliche,

Herhaud him asaileþ strongliche ;

þurch þe feld he goþ him driueinde.

Wiþ þat com his folk prikeinde,

2030

& her lord rescuweþ þere ;

C. 1824. Herhaud to nim angwisous þai were.

[leaf 118r. a]

Herha

¹ The letters in
brackets only
partially left.

Wiþ þ

Wiþ [s]¹

2035

Herh

þan

Non

Turnb. p. 76,
l. 1943.

Miche

To þe

2040

Mo þ

þat d

þe do

He seye

He seyð

2045

C. 1835. Lordin

No se ȝ

þat d[o]

Heraude to him seide : 'thou Otes of Pauye,
 Vnderstondest not of that felonye
 That thou in lombardie didest,
 Whan thou my lorde and me betraidest ?
 A-wreke we shuH therof now bee,
 Yf god wolH, or the sonne couere hir blee.'
 Otes answerd : 'thou liest on me,
 And that y shaH preoue on the.'

2015 reproached him
 with his
 treachery,

2020

To-geder they smyte with good wille,
 That bothe of their hors they felle.
 Than they drawe their swerdes kene,
 And hewe to-geder sharply, y wene.
 The duke him tempteth mightly,
 And heraude him assailleth strongly :
 Thurgh the feelde he gooth him dryuynge. [p. 64]
 With that cometh his folke priking,
 That their lorde reskewe there,
 And heraude to take they angry were :
 Bot heraude vpon him werred strongly.
 With that cometh his folke hastely :
 With strength they bee forthe goo,
 And heraude they broughte on hors thoo.
 Than gan they to-geder smyte :
 Noon spared other bot a lite.

2025 and would have
 slain him

2030

but for the
 succour of his
 men.

2035

The duke Otes had sorowe gretly,
 Whan he sawe his folke sleyn so greuously,
 And seide to his felawes thoo :
 'Lordinges, what shaH we nowe doo ?
 See ye not here a man, by name,
 That me dooth harne and moche shame,

2045

Otous called
 upon his men

	pat ha	
	3our f	2050
	Bot 3e of [h]	
	Mi loue n	
	Wip pat [p]	
	& to Herha	
	per is Her	2055
	When he h[a]	
	Ac recouer	
	For gret [s]	
	Herhaud [p]	
	Ac he him	2060
C. 1851.	W hen Gij [s]	
	& out of	
	His helme	
	& his scheld	
Turnb. p. 77, l. 1969.	& his hors	2065
	In strong	
	Wip loude	
	To pe douk[e]	
	He rescuw[e]	
	pe oper pai	2070
C. 1861.	Ac when [s?]	
	Arnend he	
	Wip loude [v?]	
	To pe douk [o]	
	pou fals wr	2075
	Wel litel pou p(?)	

leaf 118^r b and 118^v a torn off.

That hath nyghe sleyn aȝ my men,
 Youre frendes and your kynnesmen?

2050

Bot ye on him some wreke doo,
 I shaȝ you neuere loue moo.'

for revenge.

With that they assembled echoon,
 And to heraude they smyte anon.

There is heraude mysse bee-falle :

2055 Herhaud was
hard pressed,

Loste he hath his men alle,

And recouere he shaȝ some this ;

For grete socour him cometh ywis.

Heraude they dryue strongly,

And he werred on him hardily.

2060

Whan Guy sawe heraude comyng,

Oute of that stronge fighte fleyng,

His helme to-dasshed in stedes moo,

[p. 65]

but Guy came to
his aid.

His sheelde to-hewen aȝ-moste in twoo

(And his hors wounded sawe he :

2065

In stronge fighte he had bee) :

With loude steuene than he yede

To the Duke and made assaute full quede.

He rescowed heraude in the felde,

And the other they toke and helde.

2070

Whan Otes sawe sir Guyon

Guy called Oτους

Come rennyng to him as a lyoun,

With highe voice he gan vpbreide,

And to the Duke Otes thus he seide :

'Thou false and disceyuable traitour',

2075 a traitor,

Full liteȝ thou thoughte on thyn honour',

Whanne thou bee-traidest me,

And dud my men with sorowe slee

In the forest of playnes, as y forthe come

With my felawes, good knyghtes echoone.

2080

Fro hense forewarde, y telle the,

Thy dedely foo y shalbee.

and threatened to
strike off his head.

In good poynte to bee y am not like,

Tille¹ y haue thyn hede of strike.'

¹ Thille MS.

C. 1909.

C. 1917.

With that either' of theim pricked his stede, 2085

And in grete wrathe to-gider yede.

Otes smote Guy in the sheelde,

That eueñ half flowe in the felde,

And Guy gaue Otes a wounde :

Guy fell upon
Otous.

Thurgh his theighe he thruste his swerde grounde, 2090

And his hede he had him benome,

Had not grete socour' to him the rather' come.

Two hundred knyghtes assailed Guy, [p. 66]

And him wolde haue sleyñ wilfully,

And he him defended as a mañ : 2095

AH that he smote woo theim beecañ.

There they haue their' lorde redde,

And aH wounded oute of the place ledde.

But Otous al-
though wounded,
was rescued by
his men.

Guy the Almaignes before him wreketH :

Many he taketh, and many he sleeth. 2100

Guy theim driueth, and fast they flee,

As folke that greuously ouerecoñe bee.

WITH THAT come the Duke Reyner',
And the Constable sir Gaudemer' :

Guy was attacked
by Duke Reyner
and Constable
Gaudiner,

In a slade they metten Guy, 2105

And strongly on him sette they ;

And Guy him drowe toward the Roume,

And aH his felawes that with him come ;

For ther' were a thousand knyghtes

With theim to mete anone Righites. 2110

who came with a
thousand knights.

'Lordinges,' quoth Guy, 'herken to me :

Thise knyght's bee comyng' as ye may see,

The Duke Reyner of Cessoigne

And the Duke Gaudemer of Coloigne.

In euery side we bee-sette bee, 2115

So that we may not hense flee ;

And though we might y nelle ;

For forsothe, y shaH you telle,

Better it is to dye manly

Than to flee with shame and vilanye.' 2120

It is better to die
like a man than to
flee shamefully.

C. 1937.

C. 1975.

C. 1989.

Aȝ they answerd in that stede, [p. 67]
 'With the we woȝ abide veraily in dede.'
 To-gider they smyte than faste :
 Of the Almaignes they were not agaste.
 There they beganne aȝ newe fighte, 2125
 Wher-thurgh deide many a good knyghte.
 Guy gooth to smyte Duke Reyner, Guy threw Reyner
 And of his stede he felled him ther'. off his horse,
 Heraude smote to Gaudemer' there, as Herhaud did
 And oute of his sadeȝ he did him bere. 2130 Gaudiner,
 With that cometh forth Gilmyn :
 Besibbe he was the Duke Segwyn.
 Than duke Botolf he smote so, and Gilmyn did
 That of his hors he felled him tho. Botolf.
 Whan that sawe Duke Reyner 2135
 And the Constable Gaudemer,
 Before them their folke sleyne, But the Germans
 With grete sorowe and with payne rallied.
 Their' voices lowde they greyde,
 And assembled ayene with their' ayde. 2140
 With that come the Duke Reyner,
 And Gilemyn he mette ther', Gilmyn was
 So that the swerde longe and brode wounded,
 Thurgh-oute his hepe it glode.
 Gilemyn with-drowe abacke fleyng, 2145
 Ayene-warde faste priking,
 And is to Duke Segwyn come : and rode away to
 Weȝ he him knewe right soȝe. Duke Segyn.
 'Sir Duke,' quoth Gilemyn,
 Thou abidest to longe, by seynt Martyn. 2150
 Socour' thy folke, and that blyue : [p. 68]
 The Almaignes begynne fast on vs dryue.'
 Whan the Duke of Gilemyn this herde,
 And of his folke how it ferde,
 He smote his stede and gan to goon, 2155
 To his men he seide anoon :

C. 1999. [*the first 11 lines of leaf 118^v b. entirely gone*]

[leaf 118^v. b.]

	.	.	.	.	.	[o]n	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	2165
	.	.	.	.	.	, falle	
	
	.	.	.	.	.	. stiel	
	.	.	.	.	.	[h]ond	
	.	.	.	.	.	. d	2170
C. 2023.	.	.	.	.	.	[R]eyner	
	.	.	.	.	.	. er	
	.	.	.	.	.	es fere	
	
	.	.	.	.	.	. ori	2175
	
	.	.	.	.	.	. n	
	.	.	.	.	.	broun	
	.	.	.	.	.	. on	
	.	.	.	.	.	. non	2180

	.	.	.	.	.	. tede	2187
	
	.	.	.	.	.	. me	
	.	.	.	.	.	[o]me	
C. 2043.							

Baroñs, knyghtis, strengthe you

Guy wele to socour' now ;

For and Guy bee dede or noñe,

AH we bee thanne ouercoñe.'

2160

Duke Segyn
attacked the
Germans.

With that coñe the Duke dryuyng',

And the Almaignes fast assailling'.

The Duke a knyghte smote anone,

That dede he did him to grounde goon.

Guy they socour' weñ with aH :

2165

Either side fought
well.

Many a good knyght he did dede down' faH.

On either side they foughte wele

With their' launces and swerdes of stele :

They smote of hedes, armes, and honde ;

AH to-hewen' they lye in the sonde.

2170

With that coñeth Duke Reyner',

Sleyne he hath the good Gayer :

In fraunce he was borne, Guyes feere ;

To Guy he was leef and dere.

Whan Guy that sawe he was sory :

2175

Gayer was killed
by Reyner.

To the Duke he smote greuously,

That of his stede he felled him downe ;

And than he drowe his swerde browne.

Suche a stroke he smote him vpon

That dey he wende forth-with anoon.

2180

Sone there beganne a straunge shoure :

[p. 69]

To-geder they smyte knyghtis of valoure.

At last

So many strokes yiueñ thou might see

Of the knyghtis that smote so free :

Bothe with spere and with swerde

2185

They yiue many strokes and harde.

Ther' men might see straye many a stede,

And many a knyght shriche and grede.

Wherto shuld y make a tale of nought ?

The Almaignes were to deth brought.

2190

the Germans were
vanquished.

NOWE BEEN the Almaignes ouere-coñe,
To dethe wounded, and greuously noñe.

WARWICK.

K

	.	.	.	.	.	[f]leinge	
	.	.	.	.	.	[d]riueinge	
C. 2047.	.	.	.	.	.	ode gome	2195
	.	.	.	.	.	e	
	.	.	.	.	.	fro	
	.	.	.	.	.	to do	2200
	.	.	.	.	.	t	
	.	.	.	.	.	d sket	
	.	.	.	.	.	oze	
	.	.	.	.	.	[p] me	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	2205
	.	.	.	.	.	omen ichon	
C. 2059.	Or ichil telle þemperour						
Turnb. l. 1985.	3e han y-don him gret deshonor,						
MS. 119r. a.	When 3e for a fewen men						
	Schul so sone oway fien.'						2210
	þai turned hem anon riȝt,						
	& bi-gun a newe fiȝt.						
	Al togider þai gun smite ;						
¹ <i>Semblant</i> MS.	Semblant ¹ of loue þai kidde bot lite.						2215
	Heteliche to him smot Gyoun ;						
	His scheld nas nouȝt worþ a botoun,						
Turnb. p. 78,	No his twifold armes halp him nouȝt						
l. 1995.	þat in Loreyn weren y-wrouȝt.						
	Strokes hij togider delden ywis						
	On helmes & on briȝt scheldes ;						2220
	So hard þai striken hem bitvene,						
	þat gode stones fallen þer ben.						
	Aiper semed a lyoun of mode,						
	So hard þai smiten wiþ swordes gode.						
	Wiþ him smot þe douke Segyn,						2225
	No lenge miȝt he wiþhelden him ;						
	Togider þai smiten hard and wel						
	Wiþ brondes wele wrouȝt of stiel.						

Toward their' hooste they goo fleynge,
 The Duke and Guy after them dryuynge.
 With that come priking' Terry full sone,
 Of Gornoyse Aubries owne soñe,
 Of¹ thirty Knyghtis swithe and snelle
 Of his owne meyne hardy and felle :
 AH they come armed the hooste fro,
 The Almaignes socour for to doo.
 There they haue them mette :
 With loude steuene withoute lette,
 'Lordingis,' he seide, 'how goo ye?
 Ayene wende nowe with me
 To assaille eftsones your foon),
 Of whom ye bee ouerecoñe echoon),
 Or y wold telle the Emperour
 That ye haue him doo grete dishonour',
 Whan ye for a few men
 Shuld so swithe away fleen'.
 Ayene they tourned anone righte,
 And begonne there a grete fighte.
 Terry beganne a knyghte to smyte,
 Semblant of loue he made a luyte.
 Hertely to him smote Gyoune);
 His shelde auailed him not a botoun).

2195 Then came Tirri
 with thirty
 knights.

¹ With?

2200

At the call of
 Sir Tirri

2205

[p. 70]

2210 the flying Ger-
 mans turned
 again.

Guy engaged
 them,

2215

Harde strokes they to-geder deelde
 On helmes and on stronge sheelde ;
 So harde they striken them betwene,
 That goolde and stones falle ther' been).

2220

assisted by Duke
 Segyn.

Thanne come the Duke Segwyn),
 Longe ne might he withholde him ;
 To-gider they smyte harde and wele
 With swerdes well wrought of stele.

2225

Wip þat come þaikeand Tirri,
Of Gurmoise þerl sone Aubri ; 2230

Wel sternliche he smitt a kniȝt,
þat ded he fel anon riȝt.

C. 2091. So sone so douke Segyn seȝ þis,
Wel wroȝ he was wip him y-wis ;
Wroȝlich he seyd to Gij, 2235

‘ Here is gret scorn sikerly,
When þat olepi kniȝt

Schal ous do so michel vnriȝt,
& þan wip his saut owai flen.’

Gij answerd, ‘ turn we oȝen, 2240
& hardiliche aseyl we hem :

Anon turn we oȝen.’

C. 2101. þe Almauns þai go to asayl
Turnb. p. 79,
1. 2021. Wip gret strengþe in batayl ; 2245

Sorweful of hem was þe meteinge
Wip brondes of stiel wele kerueinge.

Anon þe Almaundes gin flen,
& þe oȝer turnen oȝen.

þe douk Segyn oȝain come,
Riȝt to his cite þe way he nome, 2250

MS. 119r. b. & Gij afterward wip him is go, 2255
& eke his feren also.

Wip hem þai habben her prisouns,
Doukes, eris, & barouns ;

Wel glad & bliȝe þan ben he,
& al þat weren in þat cite. 2260

To her innes þai ben y-gon,
Wel glad ben hij euerichon.

C. 2137. þe douke goȝ in-to þe tour :
His prisouns he doȝ gret anour,

Than he *tourned* his stede Tirry,
 As a good knyght, and a mighti,
 And bakward smote to a knyghte,
 That dede he falled him anone right.
 Whan the Duke Segwyñ sawe this,
 FuH wrothe he was ywis,
 And aH wrothely seide to Guy,
 'This is grete scorne sikirly,
 Whan aH him self oon knyghte
 ShaH vs doo this grete vnrighte.'
 Guy answerd, '*tourne* ayene,
 And hardily assaiHe them ;
 For better it is manly dede bee
 Than with shame away to flee.'
 The Almaignes they goo to assaily, [p. 71]
 And with grete strenght ouerecome bee they.
 Tirry to them was euere meuyngt,
 And with his swerde gretly harmyngt.
 Now goo the Almaignes fast fleyngt,
 And in their fistes their swerdes beringt.
 The Duke Segwyñ ayene come,
 And lete them passe their wey home.
 2230
 2235
 2240
 2245
 2250
THANNE the Almaignes were thus wente
 Discomfited in the feelde and shente,
 The Duke Segwyñ than wente, as ye may see,
 The right wey to the Citee ;
 And Guy of Warrewik with him is goo,
 And aH their felawes with them also.
 With them they lede their prisounes,¹
 Dukes, Erles, and also Barounes.
 FuH glad and blithe aH they bee,
 And aH that were in the Citee.
 To their Innes they bee goon
 FuH gladd and ioyefuH euerychoon.
 The Duke him wente to his toure :
 His prisouners he lokked with grete honoure

Tirri slew a
knight.

Segyn was wroth

at Tirri's prowess.

But his men soon
rallied,

defeated the
Germans,

¹ *prisouners* MS.

and returned
triumphant to
the town.

Segyn treated his
prisoners very
well,

- þerl Reyner of Sessoyne, 2265
 & þerl Gaudiner of Coloyne,
 & wiþ hem þe stewerd,
 þat gode kniȝt was & wel y-herd.
 Wiþ him eten he *hem* dede,
 & more þan himself *hem* worþschipede. 2270
 þe douke his soster cleped him to,
 þe fairest maiden þat miȝt go.
 'þe prisouns þou nim to þe,
 In þi chamber wiþ þe to be;
 In þi chaumber¹ kepes me 2275
 þis gentil kniȝtes hende & frē;
 & ouer alle oþer þe douke Reyner :
 In hert he is me lef & dere.'
 'Sir,' sche seyd, 'ichil so
 Hem to kepe my miȝt y-do.' 2280
C. 2153. ¶ Ac þe riche emperour fre,
 Of þis comberment nist he.
 Wiþ a kniȝt he pleyd atte ches
 Of Hungri, þat he loved y-wis.
 Wiþ þat com Tirri prikeinge, 2285
 In his fest his brond bereinge :
 His hauberk was al to-tore,
 & his naseł aualed bifore.
 þurch his bodi þe blod ran ;
 Tirri made no semblaunt of þan ; 2290
² MS. *alto hewen*. His strong scheld al to-hewen² was,
³ MS. *of þer*. Nouȝt a fot hole þer-of³ nas.
C. 2165. ¶ 'Emperour,' he seyd, 'vnder-stond to me :
 Hard tidinges may y telle þe
 Of þine barouns þat y-nome be ; 2295
 No schal þai neuer com to þe.
 Sum be ded & brouȝt to grounde,
 & *sum* be nomen, & *sum* be wounde :
 Y-nomen is þe douk Reyner,
 & þe constable Gaudiner ; 2300

Turnb. p. 80,
l. 2047.

¹ the *u* has a
stroke too much.

² MS. *alto hewen*.

³ MS. *of þer*.

MS. 119v. a.
Turnb. p. 81,
l. 2073.

Than,¹ Duke Reyner of Cessoigne,
 And the Erle Waldemer of Coloigne,
 And with theim Conrad the Stywarde,
 That good knyght was and not a-ferde.
 With him to ete he theim dude,
 And gretly theim he than worshipped.
 The Duke his Suster cleped him to,
 The fairest maide that on erthe might goo.
 'Thise prisouners thou take to the,
 And in thy Chambre thou kepe theim me,

2265 ¹ *The?*

2270

and committed
 them to the care
 of his sister.

[p. 72]

And ouer aȝ other the Duke Reyner,
 That to me is leef and deer.'
 'Sir,' she seide, 'y shaȝ so
 To kepe theim my might doo.'
AND THE Emperour Reyner free
 Of this combraunce ne wiste he.
 With a King he pleide at ches
 Of Hungrye, that he loued y-wis.
 With that come Terry priking,
 And in his honde his swerde bering':
 His harneis was aȝ to-tore,
 And his vomreȝ aualed before;
 Thurgh his body the blode ranne,
 And Terry made noo semblant thanne:
 His stronge shelde aȝ to-hewen was,
 That skantly any hole pees nas.
 'Emperour,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me:
 Harde tydingis y telle the
 Of thy Baroȝ that taken bee;
 Ne shaȝ they neuere come more at the.
 Some bee dede and leyde to grounde,
 And some smitten with dethes wounde.
 Take is the duke Reyner',
 And of Coloigne the Erle Waldemer';

2277 ,

2280

The emperor was

playing at chess

2285 when Sir Tirri,
in a sorry plight,

2290

brought the bad
 tidings of the rout
 of his men,

2295

2300

þe douke of Pauie wounded is
 Wiþ a swerd þurch þe bodi y-wis :
 Of þe deþ he drat him sore,
 Hele no worþ him neuer more.'

C. 2177. **W**hen þemperour herd þo 2305
 What þerl Tirri seyð him to,

Wel sori he was, & wroþ þer-fore,
 þat neyȝe he haþ his witt forlore.
 Y-sworn he haþ a wel gret oþ
 Bi god almiȝti al for-soþ, 2310
 þat neuer bliþe no worþ he,
 Al what þat cite y-nomen be,
 & þat þe ¹ traitours ben y-slawe,
 Oþer for-brent, oþer y-flawe.

¹ not quite
 distinct.

C. 2187. ¶ His ² heste he dede cri anon, 2315

² ost underdotted.

His men to arme hem euerichon ;
 His scheltromes anon he diȝt,
 & redi þai ben al to fiȝt.
 þe feldes þai ben sone ouer-gon
 þat were þe tounes bisiden on, 2320
 Al what hij comen to þe cite.

³ Gaier on an
 erasure.

Gaier³ þan forþ ȝede he
 Wiþ fif hundred armed kniȝtes,
 Hardi & wele doand in fiȝtes.

Turnb. p. 82,
 l. 2099.

þo þat weren in þe cite, 2325
 On þe Almaynes bihelden he,
 & seye þe cuntres & al þe feldes,

C. 2200. Wiþ white hauberkes & wiþ scheldes.

þe douke him com forþ wiþ þat,
 Wele y-armed on stede he sat : 2330
 'Gij,' he seyð, 'what schal we do ?
 ȝif we go & smite hem to,
 Or we gon our walles to were,
 þat þe Almayns ous nouȝt dere ?'

þan spac Sir Gij fot hot, 2335
 'Wele schaltow do, for-soþe y wot :

The Duke of paye wounded is
 With a swerde thurgh the body ywis :
 Of deth he dredde him sore,
 To eskape he weneth nomore.'

the captivity of
 Duke Reyner and
 Gaudiner,
 and wounding of
 Otoun.

WHANNE the Emperour herde tho [p. 73] 2305 The Emperor
 What the Erle Tirry tolde him to,

FuH sory he is, and wrothe therfore :
 AH-moste he hath his witte forlore.

Swore he hath a fuH grete othe :

By god aH-mighiti and forsothe,

Neuer glad shal bee he,

For that Citee take bee,

And tiH the traitours bee slawe,

In fire brende, or aH quykke drawe.

His trompettis he bade blowe anoñe,

And his hooste to harneys echooñe.

swore that he
 would never
 be bliþe again till
 he had taken the
 city,

2310

and slain the
 traitors therein.

2315

His whole host

The felde sone they haue thurgh-goön) :

Downes ne valeis they spared noon,

TiH they coñe before the Citee.

Gonrande than forthe yede he

With .v. hundred of orped knyghtes,

That hardy were and weH doynge in fighites.

AH that thoo were in the Citee,

Vpon the Almaignes gan beholde and see :

They sawe the Contrees couered and the felde

With white hauberkes, speres, and shelde.

The duke him coñe forth with that,

WeH armed vpon a good stede he sat :

'Guy,' he seide, 'what shaft we doo ?

Yf we goo to smyte theim too ?'

2320

marched to the
 city,

the van led by his
 son Gaier with
 500 knights.

2325

2330

'Sir,' seide Guy foot hote,

FuH weH thou shalt doo, y it wote.

2335 Guy advised
 Segyn to sally out
 with 100 knights ;

- Nim we now an hundred kniȝtes,
 & go asayl hem anon riȝtes.
 Bifor þe cite y se stond here
 Gaier, þemperour sone Reyner, 2340
 & fif hundred ¹ kniȝtes in her ferred,
 Wele y-armed on heye stede.
 Biforn her ost þei ben y-comen,
 Angwisous ous to nimen ;
 & ȝif we habbeȝ gret nede, 2345
C. 2218. Ozain-ward we mai ous spede.[']
 Anon þai nomen an hundred kniȝtes,
 Hardi & of most miȝtes ;
 þai wenten out of þat cite,
 Wel modi men weren he. 2350
 Wip þe Almauns þai wil iusti,
 Nil hii nouȝt wip hem acordi ;
 Togider þai smiten hard & swiȝe,
 Of hors þai fellen mani a siȝe.
 ¶ Sir Gij him smot to Gaier, 2355
 & feld him doun of his destrer,
 & seȝþen he wan him in þat fiȝt ;
 þe oȝer oway flowen ² anon riȝt.
 Toward þe ost þai flowen snelle,
 þe hete was swiȝe strong wip alle. 2360
 Mani þai nomen & bounden fast,
 & ladde into þe cite on hast.
C. 2235. **W**hen þai of þe ost y-seye þis,
 þat her folk ouercomen is,
 & þat was in þat fiȝt y-nome 2365
 Gaier, þat was þemperour sone,
 þan ³ hastiliche þe ost ichon
 Opon Segyn þat smiten anon.
 þer bigan a newe fiȝt,
 Wharþurch died mani a kniȝt. 2370
 On aiȝer side mani on dyed y-wis ;
 Ac þe douke wers bifallen is,

¹ originally
hundered, but the
 first *e* under-
 dotted.
 MS. 119v, b.

Turnb. p. 83,
 l. 2125.

² originally
blowen.

³ *an* not quite
 distinct.

Woſt we take a thouſand knyghtes,
 And goo theim aſſaile anone rightes.
 Before the Citee y ſee ſtonde here
 Gaier, the Emperours ſone Reyner',
 And .v. hundred knyghts at his lede,
 Full weſt armed vpon their ſtede.
 Before their hoost they bee come :
 Lete vs theim aſſaile now full ſone.
 Yf we of ſocour haue any nede,
 Ayenewarde we mowe vs ſone ſpede.'

which was done.

[p. 74]

2340

2345

Than oute of the Citee bee they goon
 Full ſwithe haſty right anon,
 The Almaynes for to aſſaile :
 Therof they thinke not to faille.
 To-geder they ſmyte harde and ſwithe,
 Of hors they felle many a ſithe.
 Guy dooth ſmyte to Gaier,
 And felled him downe right ther',
 And ſo toke him ther' in that fighte :
 The other flowen anone righte.
 Toward the hoost they flee, y you telle,
 The other after, theim to quelle.

2350

2355 Gaier was taken
prisoner,and his men put
to flight.

2360

Whan they of the hooste ſawe this,
 That their folke ſo ouere-come is,
 And that ther' was in that fighte nome
 Gaier, the Emperours ſone,
 Than haſted they of the hoost echoon,
 Vpon Segwyn they ſmyte anon :
 Begonne they haue a full ſtronge fighte,
 Wher-thurgh deide many a knyghte.

The German
main army

2365

attacked Segyn,

2370

and ſlew many of
his men.

- For miche of his folk he les.
 Al aunteousliche *per* he comen wes.
 þurch pride þan ferd he 2375
 Fram his ost, and fram his cite.
 Wele hii deden no þe les,
 He and Gii þat miȝti wes,
 & wiþ hem Herhaud of Arderne ;
 To hem þai smiten swiþe ȝerne.¹ 2380
C. 2253. ¶ Wiþ þat com prikeing Tirri,
 þat gode kniȝt was & hardi ;
 To þe douk Segyn he smot,
 & of his hors feld him fot hot ;
 Ac þe douk anon vp stert, 2385
 As he þat was agremed in hert,
 & out he drouȝ his sward of stiel,
 & defended him swiþe wel.
 Whom þat he rauȝt, ded he fel ;
 Strong kniȝt he was, hardi & snel. 2390
 þer he defended him asperliche ;
 þe Almaunis him asayl hastiliche :
 Y-loken he was hem amidwerd,
 To him þai launced boþe spere and sward.
 In mani stede wounded is he ; 2395
C. 2268. Wele he werþe him þei he sailed be.
When Gij seye þe douke of fot,
 For sorwe no wist he no bot ;
 Wel hardiliche he smot a kniȝt,
 þat ded he feld him anon riȝt. 2400
 His sward of stiel he haþ up pliȝt,
 & smot so anoþer kniȝt
 þat asailed þe douke Segin,
 þat heued sone binam him,
 & seþþe he sett him his stede opon, 2405
 & fast hii asailed her fon ;

Turnb. p. 84,
l. 2151.

¹ originally
ȝerne, but the
second *n* under-
dotted.

MS. 120r. a.

Turnb. p. 85,
l. 2177.

Segyn, Guy, and
Herhaud wrought
wonders.

With that come priking Tirry, 2381

That good knyght was and hardy :

To the duke Segwyn he smote, [p. 75]

That langestreighte he felled him fote hote ;

And the Duke anone vpsterte, 2385

As he that wrothe was in herte,

And smote aboute with his swerde of stele,

And as a man defendeth him wele.

Segyn,
dismounted by
Tirri,

was pressed hard,

Tirry him assaileth sharply,

And the Almaignes forth-with him hastily :

In many places wounded is he, 2395

That all-moste he weneth dede bee.

Whan Guy sawe the Duke afote,

For sorowe ne wiste he noomaner bote :

There he smote to a knyght,

That dede he felled him anon right. 2400

but rescued by
Guy.

The Duke he sette his stede vpon,

And gooth to assaille than their' foond.

Fro thense woth they neuere drawe,

Till they the Almaignes haue slawe.

2405

- þennes nil hii neuer gon
C. 2280. Er hii han slawe mani on. 2410
 ¶ 'Sir douk,' seyd Gyoun,
 'Vnderstond to mi resoun :
 To þe cite oȝain we wil go,
 Ful wele we may it now do ;
 A þousand þer beþ of armed kniȝtes 2415
 þat sone wiþ ous wil holde fiȝtes ;
 & we here lenger duelle
 For foles we schullen ous telle.'
 Into her cite þai ben y-gon,
 Togider þai asembled hem ichon, 2420
 & at þe alours þai ¹ defended hem,
 & abiden bataile of her fomen.
- C. 2293.** ¶ When þemperour y-herd þis,
 þat his sone y-nomen is,
 Wiþ loude steuen þan hete he 2425
 His folk asayl þat cite
 Wiþ schot of bowe and alblast,
 Wiþ swerdes, speres schete & cast,
 Wiþ laddren steye, þat coupe best.
 þe cite to asail haue þai no rest, 2430
 Wiþ stones & manguels fast to cast :
 þe fair walles al to-dast.²
 & hii wiþ-in fended hem wele apliȝt,
 & hii wiþ-uten ȝeld hem gret fiȝt ;
 þe Almayns þat ilke day þere 2435
 Wiþ gret sorwe y-slawe were.
 Strongliche þai asail þe cite,
 Ac þat day noþing no speden he ;
 At euen þat wiþ-drouȝ hem oȝan.
- C. 2311.** þemperour was þer-fore a sori³ man, 2440
 þat he no miȝt⁴ of þat cite spede,
 No awreken him for no nede.
 þe cite ich day what niȝt
 þai asailed wiþ gret miȝt ;

Turnb. p. 86,

l. 2293.

² MS. *alto dast*.

MS. 120r. b.

³ MS. *asori*⁴ *nomiȝht* MS.,
not *nought*.

The Almaignes on theim *pursewe* so stronge,
That it endure they might not longe.

2410

‘SIR DUKE Segwyn,’ seide Gyoun,
‘Vnderstonde to my reesoun :

At Guy’s advice
they retreated

To the Cite ayene y rede we goo,
For weñ we may it nowe doo ;

For, and we here any lenger duelle,
For fooles we may oure-self telle ;
For they been fourty ayenst vs oon.’
Withoute moo to the Citee they bee goon,
And at añ houres defended theim,
And so refresshed theim-self and their’ men.

2420 into the town.

Whanne the Emperour’ herde this,
That his soñe so taken is,

[p. 76]

The Emperour
with his whole
army

With lowde steuene than commaunded he
His folke in haste to assaille that Citee
With shotte of bowe and arblaste,
With swerdes and speres shete and kaste ;

2425

now assaulted the
city,

Bot they within defende theim a-right,
And they withoute yelde theim euere grete fight :
Bot the Almaignes that daie there
With grete sorowe sleyne were,

2435

but it was well
defended.

And at Euen they been withdrawe :
The Emperour was sory in his sawe,
That he ne mighte of the Citee spede,
Ne awreke him at his nede.

2440

Bot for añ that the Citee euery day fourtnyght
They dud assaille with grete myght,

The assault,
though repeated
every day,

Ac þe douk, Gij, and Herhaud, 2445
 Oft hem makeþ mani asaut,
 & miche of his folk þan slouȝ hii,
 Wharfore he was *in* hert sori.

Lordinges, listeneþ to me now !
 Of a tresoun ichil telle ȝou : 2450

It was opou a somers day,
 þemperour hadde eten, soþ to say ;
 His huntes he of-sent þo,¹
 & seyde he wald on hunting go
 Into þe forest erlike, 2455

¹ þo altered
 from so.

Turnb. p. 87,
 l. 2229.

þat þe douk Segyn nouȝt no wite,
 No his kniȝtes neuer þe mo.
 þat him herd a spie þo,
 þat out of þat ost dede him fast,

C. 2336. To þe douke Segyn he com an hast. 2460

¶ þe douke Segyn oved him snelle
 What newe tidinges he couȝe telle :
 ‘ Sir,’ quod [he ²], ‘ herken to me :

² he omitted in
 MS.

Gode tidinges y telle þe,
 þat þemperour, sikerliche, 2465

Wille huntte to morwe arliche
 In his forest priueliche

Wiþ litel folk & nouȝt wiþ miche,
 Wiþ also litel als he may.

Y no gabbe nouȝt, for soþe to say.’ 2470

þan he hade seyde þus to Segyn,
 ‘ Bi Seyn Richer ! leue frende mine,’

Seyde þe douke, ‘ and it so be,

An hundred bessauȝs ȝif y þe.’

þe spie seyde, ‘ soþe y sigge : 2475

My bodi þerfore in ostage y legge.’

C. 2355.
 MS. 120v. a.

¶ þan haþ þe douk y-cleped Gij,
 & Herhaud of Arderne sikerlij,
 Dan Belin, & dan Gauter,
 & þe þridde dan Holdimer, 2480

And the Duke, Guy, and heraude

2445 was unsuccessful.

Mightly withstode their stronge assaute :

Moche folke of his slowen they,

Wherfor he was in herte sory.

2448

One day the
Emperor

determined to go
hunting next
morning.

A spy

informed Duke
Segyn of it.

The Duke
told the news to
Guy, Herhand,
Belin, Gauter,
Holdiner and
Joceran,

- & Joceran þat was of Speyne
 (Was non wiser in-to Almayne
 Turnbull p. 88, A gode *conseyl* for to ȝiue;
 l. 2255. þerfore he was michel to leue).
- C. 2361.** 'Lordinges,' he seyð, 'what rede ȝe, 2485
¹ MS. *tome* Seþþe þat ȝe be sworn to me ¹?
 What is ous best for to done
 Of our king Reyner? telle me sone.'
 Gij to him answerd snelle,
 'þe best rede ichil þe telle : 2490
 Kniztes we schul han a þousinde,
 & bi þe morwe, ȝif we him finde,
 Ichil him bidde wiþ hert fre
 þat he wil acord wiþ þe,
 & þat he cum wiþ þe at ete ; 2495
 & ȝif he seyþ ouȝt wiþ hete,
 þat he it wil graunt for no þing,
 Hider we schul bring þe king.
 & þou schalt here bileue now,
 Opon þi lord go no schaltow ; 2500
 þi palays þou schalt grayþi,
 & riche metes diȝt redi.'
 Þe douk answerd anon riȝt :
 'So help me god, ful of miȝt,
 Also þou wilt, þou schalt do.' 2505
 Wiþ þat is Gij þennes y-go ;
 In-to þe way he dede him anon
- C. 2400.** þer þemperour schuld forþ gon.
 Turnbull p. 89, þemperour bi þe morwe aros,
 l. 2281. Into his forest he rideþ & gos : 2510
 A gret bore þai founðen, y-wis,
 & hij vncopled her houndis ;
¹ *schrille*? Her hornes þai blewe loude & stille,¹
 Her houndes vrn wiþ gode wille.
 ¶ þemperour biheld sone wiþ þan 2515
² MS. *adiche* Unto a diche² þat water in ran ;

asking counsel.

Guy offered to
meet the Emperor
in the forest with
a hundred
knights,

ask him to dine,

and at least
bring him into
the city.

The Duke readily
assented,

and Guy set out.

Next morning
the Emperor
repaired to the
forest.
A boar was
unsloughed.

Pursuing him,

- He seyð, 'y-treyst we ben here :
 Sir Tirri, mi frende dere,
¹ MS. 304 No sestow hou¹ þat 3onder ride
 Kniȝtes? þai ben of gret pride. 2520
- MS. 120v. b. On ich halue bisett we beþ,
 Nis her nouȝt bot þe deþ.
 Felawes þai be þe douke Segyn,
 Whom þat god 3if iuel fin!
 Gij of Warwike þer y sey, 2525
 Y-armed on his stede an hey.'
 'Sir emperour,' quod Tirri anon,
 'For þe rode loue þat god was on don,
 Ich þe bidde, hennes go now,
 For godes loue no lenge bileue þou! 2530
 & ichil here bileuen ay,
 & 3if ich Gij mete may,
- C. 2436.** Wiþ meschaunce y schal him gret,
 & al his feren þat y mete.
 Turnbull p. 90, 1. 2307. Ar ich be ded or nomen be 2535
 þou schalt passe al þis cuntre.'
 þemperour seyð, 'for soþe, y nille :
² *we* in *wiþ* altered from *3*. Here ichil wiþ² 3ou duelle.'
 Hastiliche þai armed hem anon,
 & lepe her gode stedes opon. 2540
 ¶ Wiþ þat come Gij prikeinde,
 & a smal tvice in his hond bereinde
 Of oliue, in token of pais :
 To þemperour he grad as curteys,
 & seyð, 'god, þat alle þing may se, 2545
- C. 2452.** Sir emperour, so loke þe
 þiselue, & al þi meyne,
 þat in place wiþ þe be!
 þe douke Segyn þe sent bi me
 þat trewþe & loue he wil to þe, 2550
 & biddeþ þe als his lord dere,
 þeselue, & alle þine fere,

they found
themselves
amid armed men,

among whom
they recognized
Guy.

Tirri advised the
Emperor to
retreat,

but he refused.

Guy approached
with an olive
branch in his
hand,

and in Segyn's
name,

invited the
Emperor
and his com-
panions

þat wiþ þe ben togider here,
 þat 3e come to him to þe dinere ;
 And his gode cite he wil þe 3elde 2555
 Wiþ al his castels he hap in welde ;
 & 3if he haue don o3ain skille,
 He wille amende it to þi wille.
 ¶ When þemperour herd him speke so,
 & so gret loue bede him to, 2560
 þe king of Hongrie¹ he cleped þo,
 And sir Tirri he dede also :
 'Lordinges,' he seyð, 'what schal we do ?

¹ o in *Hongrie*
 altered from u.

C. 2472. Rede 3e þat we þider go ?

[A leaf lost : only
 the capital let-
 ters of about a
 third of first
 page, first col.,
 left.]

þ	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	2565
þ	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
W	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
þ	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
H	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
þ	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	2570
T	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
W	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
3	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
M	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
Y	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	2575
F	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
Y?	.	.	.	.	.	.	.

C. 2491.

to dine with the
Duke,
who was willing
to surrender.

- W**HANNE the Emperour herde him speke so, 2559
 And so grete loue shewe him to, 2560
 The king of hungry he cleped him to,
 And sir Tirry of Gurmeyse also :
 'Lordinges,' he seide, 'what shaft we doo ?
 Rede ye that we thider goo ?'
 Than seide Terry to the Emperour : 2565
 'The Duke you dooth grete honour,
 Whan he his Citees and Castell's echoone, [p. 77]
 That stronge been of lyme and stooñe,
 Añ deliuere at thyn owne wille
 (Thanke thou owest him by reason and skille), 2570
 And at thy wille his body doo.
 Wende ye thider, y rede you so ;
 For, if he doo as thise men haue highte,
 More Worship the doo he ne mighte ;
 For with strength thou getest this profre neuere, 2575
 With añ the power that thou kan keuer.'
 'I wol,' quoth the Emperour, 'that it so bee,
 Bot that y him nought see,
 Tiñ y haue counsailled me
 With my barons that in their hostage bee.' 2580
 With that they gynne for to wende,
 And of accorde speke the knight's hende.
 To Ransone they bee come,
 And richely there they bee vnder-noome ;
 And Guy him dresseth with añ his might 2585
 Weñ to serue bothe baron and knight :
 Ther' was yoman ne swayne noon,
 Bot Guy theim yiftes yaue good woon.

The Emperor
asked his men's
advice.

On Tirri's repre-
sentation,

the Emperor
accepted the
invitation.

At Arascoun

2585 they were served
very well.

C. 2509.

C. 2527.

Whan it was nyghte, to bedde they goo,

And erly arise withoute moo.

2590 The next morn-
ing the Emperour
went to church.

To the Chirche the Emperour is goo,

For to here his masse tho.

His eerles and barouns aboute him gan stonde,

That were of many dyuerse londe ;

2595

And the Duke there was nought,

For the Emperour hym hated in his thought.

The same daye tymely

[p. 78]

The Duke aroosse full eerly :

The Duke

Rewthfully he dighte him there

In his sherte allone with open heere :

2600

A stronge roope he toke thoo,

And aboute his nekke he gan it doo.

Than to his prisouners he is goon,

asked his
prisoners

And theim dooth reson oon by oon :

'Lordinges, barouns, y bidde you,

2605

That ye wold prey for me now

to intercede for
him with the
Emperor,

To our lorde, so well ye may,

That he me foryue this same day

His wrathe and his male-talent.'

And all they him graunte with oon assent.

2610 which they
promised to do.

Than he threwe his mantell of :

Many man had grete rewthe therof.

In his sherte he stode allone :

In his shirt,

For him was made mikel moue.

To the Emperour he gooth soo,

2615

An Olyue boughe in his handes twoo,

That pees shuld beetoken betwene theim.

All weping his wey forth he doth kenne.

Thurgh the strete barefote he gooth

barefooted

And barehede in his sherte forsoth

2620 and bareheaded,
with a rope round
his neck, he went
towards the
church.

With a roope aboute his swere :

Many man behelde him there.

Erles and Dukes of grete valour

For him they preide to the Emperour :

C. 2539.

C. 2561.

C. 2567.

- On their knees vpon the stoon 2625
 For him they besoughte euerychoon,
 That he wolde haue mercy of Segwyn [p. 79]
 For goddis loue and seynte Martyn.
 With that is Segwyn to the Chirche come,
 On his knees he felle full sone : 2630
 Of the Emperour he besoughte mercy
 For goddis loue and oure Lady.
 'SIR EMPEROUR,' seide Segwyn,
 'This daie is come ending myn,
 Bot thou haue mercy on me. 2635
 At thy wille it shal bee.
 No lenger y ne wolt thy wrath dryue,
 While y am man a-lyue,
 Bot oute of this londe y shalt goo,
 And neuere ayene to come moo. 2640
 Here my swerde, thou take it,
 And myn hede of thou smyte,
 Or what thy wille is, doo by me
 (Myn owne Lorde, y wolt it so bee)
 For the folie that y dude, 2645
 Whan y slowe thy neuiew in that stede.'
 Than bespake the Emperoures sone
 To his fader and seide: 'sir, of your benesone,
 Segwyn is a noble baroun).
 Holden he hath vs in prisoun): 2650
 To vs he hath bee full kynde,
 And to you hereafter¹ may bee well helping.
 Bot thou foryue him thy wrath swithe,
 Of me thou shalt neuere bee blithe.'
 Than seide the Duke Reyner full sone : 2655
 'Sir Segwyn is a noble baroun.
 Sithe he obeyeth him to thy wille, [p. 80]
 Foryue him thy wrathe, and that is skille,
 Of thy neuiew, that he slow by cas;
 For in his defence, by god, it was. 2660

Segyn asked the
Emperor's
mercy:

he would rather
die than endure
the Emperor's
wrath any longer

for having killed
his nephew.

The Emperor's
son seconded
Segyn's en-
treaties.

¹ MS. apparently
heraftis.

Duke Reyner
protested that
Segyn slew the
Emperor's
nephew in his
own defence.

C. 2579.

C. 2587.

C. 2597.

C. 2607.

- And if any wo^{ll} *contrary* that y-sey,
 Before you to preoue it my gloue y wo^{ll} ley.
 And bot if thou haue of him *mercy*,
 Euer here-after y shalbee thyn enmy.'
- Than come forthe sir' Gaudemer', 2665 Gaudiner,
 And thus to the Emperour' he spake there :
 'Sir, y loue the Duke ouere a^{ll} thing';
 For he vs hat^h doo grete worshipping',
 And sworne brethern we bee two :
 And thou hense forewarde him mysdoo, 2670
 A^{ll} my people y sha^{ll} forsende,
 And in-to Coloigne y sha^{ll} wende :
 Thy Castellis and Citees, that been so stronge,
 Destroye y sha^{ll} for thy wronge.
 Bot thou mercy of him haue nowe, 2675
 A^{ll} this y sha^{ll} ayenst thy prowē.'
 With that come the Styward forthe :
 'Sir, the Duke is moche worthe,
 And grete worship he hat^h vs doo
 (Neuere more yet come vs vnto), 2680
 Whan he in bataille vs hat^h no^me,
 And you hat^h thus doo hider come.
 Bot thou of him haue the rather *mercy*,
 Euere of me hereafter thou shalt failly.'
- With that cometh forth Guy 2685
 Of Warrewik, the Knyght hardy :
 'Sir, for goddⁱs Loue y bidde the, [p. 81]
 On this Duke thou haue *mercy* and pitee,
 And with that y sha^{ll} your man become
 To serue the, Lorde, a^{ll} and so^me.' 2690
 Tirry is than forthe come,
 Of Gormeyse Aubries so^me :
 'Sir, on this Duke ye must haue *mercy*
 For loue of thise good men, that stonde you by.
 Yf thou haue loste thurgh him 2695
 Sadok the hende, that was thy kyn,

a sworn brother
of the Duke's,

even threatened
to make war upon
the Emperor if he
should refuse to
pardon Segyn.

After him came
the Emperor's
Steward,

then Guy of
Warwick,

and even Tirri.

C. 2613.

MS. fol. 121r. a. ' Sir emperour, wat hastow do ?
C. 2613. Is þe acord made bitven 3ou to ?
 Astow þe douke Segyn y-kist,
 þe strong traitour & vnwrest ? 2720
 & haþ for-3if al in loue
 Sadok dep, þi suster sone ?
 þat þe wil dred, say me on ;
 þe misdo þai willen ichon ;
 When her wretþe and her gilt 2725
 So liztliche for-3if þou wilt,
 Hennes forward wil þe dred non,
 Schame anou3 þai wil þe don ;
 & 3if þou haddest þe douk anhong,
 In þi lond men wold¹ þe dred strong, 2730
 & þan after-ward þe treytour Gij,
 þat neuer dede ous bot vilayni.

¹ MS. *wil*

In his stede y shaH bee,
 And with aH my might serue the.
 Therfor' at an ende y beseche the,
 Foryiue him your wrathe with herte free.

2700

And bot ye woH that doo,
 Beleue it weH withoute wordes moo.'¹
 So longe they haue the Emperour bede,
 That he is agreable to their rede.

[¹ Two lines, at
 least, lost.]

At last the
 Emperor yielded
 to their entreaties,

To theim he seith with herte free :

2705

'Lordes, baroñs, herken to me.

Now ye aH haue bidden so,

For your loue y shaH thus doo,

And for sir' Guy, that is englissh,

That so good knyghit and curteys is :

2710

AH my wrathe y foryiue him

For loue of the soules of my kynn,

And for y him so mylde see.

seeing Segyn so
 humble.

Vnderstonde nowe and herken to me :

For he me crieth mercy withoute pride,

2715

Mercy he shaH haue to his mede.'

[*A few lines lost* = C 2625—2632.]

But Duke Otoun
 blamed the
 Emperor's lenity.

- Ac now þai worþ wiþ þe priue,
 & better þan alle we.
 Turnbull p. 92, 1. 2359. & topen al þis, 3if Gij wer ded, 2735
 We miȝten haue þe lesse dred.¹
- C. 2645. **W**hen Gij herd Otus speke so,
 Als a wilde bore he lepe him to :
 'Otus!' quap Gij, 'þou schalt daye,
 When þou of tresoun clepes ous baye, 2740
 Boþe Segyn & eke me :
 þou it schal abie, bi mi leute !'
 Him he smot wiþ his fest
 Amide the teþ, riȝt al in¹ earnest.
 Ac þe barouns bitvene hem goþ, 2745
 & þemperour swore his oþ,
 3if ani þer were so hardy
 þat dede oþer schame oþer vilanie,
 Bren men him scholde, oþer to-hewe,²
 Oþer al to-hewe³ at wordes fewe. 2750
 þan doþ þai crie purch þe cuntraye,
 þat of þo wordes no man schuld saye ;
 ' & 3if þer doþ, wiþ-uten no,
 Hond oþer fot he schal for-go.'
- C. 2675. ¶ Than seyð þemperour on þis maner 2755
 To þe douke Segyn oforn hem þer :
 ' Sir douke, ichil loue þe :
 Wiif þou schalt haue bi me.
 A feir soster ich haue in mi bour
 Ichil þe 3if,' quap þemperour : 2760
 'Erneborwe hat þat may.'
 Anon he hir spoused þat day.
 þe bridale was holden wiþ game, y plizt.
 Neuer 3et nas non fairer in sizt.
 He loued hir, & worþ-schiped swiþe : 2765
 To his cite he ladde hir siþe,
 He and Erneborwe his leuedi
 þer hii wold soiornij.⁴

¹ *al in* on an erasure.

² a letter erased before *hewe*.
³ *to-drawe*?

MS. 121r. b. ;
 Turnbull p. 93,
 1. 2385.

⁴ MS. *soiornij*

Guy, in wrath,

challenged Otoun ;

but the Emperor,

on pain of death,

forbade the fight.

THANNE seide the Emperour anone [p. 82] 2755

To the Duke Segwyn, as ye may here echoñ :

‘ Sir Duke, y shañ loue the :

Segyn was
wedded to the
Emperor's sister,

Wif thou shalt haue thurgh me

A faire Suster y haue in my boure :

I shañ hir yiue the to *paramoure*.’

2760

Erneborugh highte that faire may :

Erneborwe.

Anone he spoused theim that same day.

The brideale was holde with game and pley,

And therof had a ioyefull day.

He loued hir, and worshipped swithe :

2765

To Bornewik he ledde hir blithe,

He and Erneborgh his wif gentiñ

There they wolde soiourne a whiñ.

WARWICK.

M

- Anon after þe tende day
 Of her soiourn, soþe to say, 2770
C. 2685. ¶ Gij is to þe douke y-go,
 & at him asked leue þo :
 ' Sir douk,' he seyð, ' gon ich-ille,
 In þis cuntre bileue y nille.
 In wer ich haue serued þe : 2775
 3if þou haue euer eft nede to me,
 After me þou sende sikerliche,
 & ich com to þe hastiliche.'
 ' Sir,' quap þe douk, ' gramerci !
 3ete haue y nouzt serued þe, sir Gij. 2780
 Here, ich bid þe, bileue wiþ me :
 Half mine castels, & half mi cite,
 þe worþschip of Lowayn haluen-del,
 Ich it þe graunt, Gij, fair & wel.'
 Gij tok his leue ; oway went he : 2785
C. 2700. þe douke wepe sore, & hadde pite.
 þemperour þat was so fre,
 Wiþ him Gij þan ladde he ;
 Castels him bede, & cites,
 Gret worþschip, & riche fes, 2790
 Ac he þerof nold afo,
 For noþing þat he miȝt do.
 To Almayn went ben he,
 To Espire þat riche cite.
 ¶ þemperour worþschiped Gij þe fre ; 2795
 A while wiþ him bileft he.
 To pleyne hem þai went bi riuer
 þat of wilde foule ful were ;
 To her wille an hunting hij gos,
 To chace þe hert & þe ros. 2800
 On a day as he cam fram hunting
 A dromond he seye ariueing.
 þider-ward sir Gij is y-gon,
 & gret þe marchandes euerichon.

And after the twentieth day
 Of his sojourning, the sothe to say, 2770
 Guy is to the Duke goo,
 And asked him leue thoo.
 'Sir Duke,' he seide, 'goo y shaft
 In-to my Contrey withoute lenger taryng at all.
 In thy werre y haue serued the, 2775
 And yf thou haue any thing to doo with me,
 After me thou sende hardily,
 And y shaft come right hastely.'
 'Sir,' seide the duke, 'graunt mercy!
 I haue it not deserued to the, sir Guy. 2780
 Abide heer, and duelle with me :
 Half my castellis thou shaft haue and Citee.'

Guy took his leave
of Segyn,

who in vain tried
to detain him.

Guy toke his leue, and forthe wente he : 2785
 The Duke wepte sore for pitee.
 The Emperour also wente his wey, [p. 83]
 And Guy with him, the sothe to sey.
 Castellis were boden him, and Citees,
 Riche worship, and grete fees, 2790
 And he therof wolde noon,
 For noo thing they kouthe doon;

to Spires.

Staying there,

Bot at their wille an huntynge they goo
 In euery manere Guy solace for to doo. 2800
ON A DAYE as Guy come fro dere sheting
 By a cooste he sawe a shippe aryving.
 Thiderwardes he is goon :
 Faire he grette the maryners echoon.

Guy one day,
returning from
hunting,

- MS. fol. 121v. a. 'Lordinges, wheznes com 3e, 2805
 þat in þis riuer ariued be?
 Bi 3our semblant y se, y-wisse,
 þat 3e ledde gret richesse.'
 Among hem alle *per* spac on,
 þat coupe speke for hem euerichon : 2810
 'Fram Costentine þe noble y-comen we be :
 Lond of peys þan seche we.
 Marchandes we ben of þat lond,
 & out y-driuen wiþ michel wrong :
 Out of Coyne þe riche soudan, 2815
 So prout he is, & of so gret boban,
 þat wiþ .xv. heþen kinges,
 & þritti emeraus, wiþ-outen lesinges,
 ¶ In Costentyn þe noble emperour Ernis
 þai han strongliche bisett, y-wis. 2820
 Castel no cite nis *him* non bileued,
 þat altogider þai han to-dreued,
 & for-brant, & strued, y-wis.
 Into Costentyn flowen he is ;
 þer he werþ him ozaines his fon, 2825
 þat secheþ on him for to slon.
 þritti mile men may riden & gon,
 Ne schal men finde man non ;
 & we ben aschaped vnneþe,
 þat we no were to-hewen to deþe. 2830
 Y-comen we ben into þis cuntre :
 Fowe & griis anouz lade we,
 Gold and siluer, & riche stones,
 þat vertu bere mani for þe nones,
 Gode clopes of sikelatoun & Alisaundrinis, 2835
 Peloure of Matre, & pu[r]per & biis,
 To 3our wille as 3e may se ;
 Swiche be þe tidinges of þat cuntre.'
 Gij answerd, 'mi frende fre,
 For 3our tidinges blisced 3e be ! 2840

‘Lordingis,’ he seide, ‘of whense comē ye, 2805

That in this contree thus arriued bee ?

By your' semblant y see, y-wis,

'That ye lede grete richesse.'

Amonges theim all ther' spake oon),

That weſt kouthe ſpeke for theim, anon): 2810

‘ Fro Constantyn-noble comē bee we,

learned from
Greek merchants

Londe of pees to seche, in verite.

Marchant's we been of that lande.

And oute driuen with stronge hande ;

For of Coyne the riche sowdan

2815 that the Soudan

(Proude he is, and of grete boban),

He hath with him fiftene kynges,

And .xxx.^{ti} admirallis, withoute lesinges.

In-to Constantyn-noble the Emperour flowen is,

had besieged the
Emperor Ernſt, in
Constantinople.

And they haue him beseged, y-wys.

There is him lefte noon other Citee,

Bot all haue destroyed withoute pitee.

after devastating
all Greece.

Fro thense we might eskafe vnnethe, [p. 84]

Bot were weH nyghe broughte to dethe. 2830

Come we bee thus in-to this contree :

Voir' and grys enough lede we,

They had escaped
with difficulty.

Golde and siluer and riche stones,

That vertues bereth for the nones.

Suche bee the tiding's of that contree.'

Than answerd Guy : ' my frend is free,

Guy,

God, for his name seuene,
He bring zou to gode heuene !'

a altered from c. **W**hen þe marchaundes hadde seyde as y say,
Gij bitauzt hem god & gode day.¹

Vnto his in he is y-go, 2845

And Herhaud he eleped anon him to.

'Herhaud, mi frende, wille we gon ?

At þemperour take we leue anon.

MS. 121v. b.

Into Costentyn-noble ichil go

To help þemperour of his wo : 2850

þat wiþ þe soudan biseged is he,

So siggeþ men of þat cuntre ;

þat lond destrud & men aqueld,

& cristendom þai han michel afeld.'

Herhaud answerd, 'y graunt it be : 2855

Miche worþschipe it worþ to þe.'

At þemperour þai toke leue to go,

& he hem graunted vnneþe þo ;

Anouþ he bedeþ hem castels & tours,

Riche cites, halles, & bours. 2860

Sir Gij toke an hundred of his kniȝtes,

Strongest and best in fiȝtes,

þat he miȝt in Almayne finde,

Mest y-preised & best doinde.

*Turnbull p. 97,
l. 2489.*

Now þai ben to schippe y-went : 2865

Gode winde god haþ hem lent.

To Costentyn-noble þai ben y-come,

& in þe cite her in y-nome.

Ac when þemperour wist atte frome

þat Gij of Warwike was y-come, 2870

Tvay erls he dede after him go,

& loueliche he bad hem com him to.

& sir Gij him goþ to þemperour fre :

'Welcome, sir Gij,' þan seyde he.

'Of þine help gret nede haue we. 2875

Michel ich haue herd speke of þe.

God, for his names seuen,
 Bringe you sone to good haüen.'

WHANNE the *merchauntis* had tolde as y you sey,
 Guy betaughte theim god and good day.

To his ynne he is goo, 2845

Heraude of Ardern he cleped him to.

by the advice of
 Herhaud,

'Heraude,' he seide, 'woH we goon

At the Emperour to take our' leeu anoon ?

In-to Constantyn-noble woH we goo

To helpe the Emperour oute of woo : 2850

determined to
 help the Eastern
 Emperor,

That with a Sowdan beseged is he,

So telleth me men of that contree.'

Heraude answerd, 'y graunte it so bee : 2855

Grete worship it may tourne the.'

At the Emperour he toke leeu to goo,

and took leave of
 the Western one.

And he him graunted vnnethe tho.

ThaH toke Guy an hundred knyghtes

The arrival of
 Guy with 100
 knyghts

Of the stalworthest and best in fightes,

That he might in Almaigne fynde,

And most preised and best doynge.

Anone they bee to shippe wente : [p. 85] 2865

Good wynde god hath theim sente.

To Constantyn-noble they bee come,

at Constantinople

And, whan the Emperour wiste that anoon,

That Guy of Warrewik with his compaignye

Was logged in his Citee, 2870

Two erles he did for him goo,

That he wolde come him to.

And Guy him gooth to the Emperour free :

'Welcome, sir Guy,' than seide he.

2875 was heartily
 welcomed by the
 Emperor,

'To thy helpe grete nede haue we.

Moche y haue herde speke of the.

- Mine men ben sleyn in þis tide,
 & mi lond destrud in ich a side :¹
 Al bot þis ich selue cite
 Destrud & brent hauen he. 2880
- ² originally *þai*
þai, but the
 second *þai*
 crossed out.
 Fourti þousand þai² slowe on a day
 Of mine men, as ich 3ou telle may.
 Mine men þai slowe, mi sone also,
 Wharfore, leue frende, y bede þe to,
 3if þou miȝt me of hem wreke, 2885
 & þe felouns out of mi lond do reke,
 Mine feyr³ douhter þou schalt habbe,
 & half mi lond, wiþ-uten gabbe.'
 þan answerd anon sir Gij,
 'Sir,' he seyde, 'gramercij ! 2890
 & y þe sigge, bi mi leute,
 þat treweliche ichil serue þe
 Al þe while þat ich wiþ þe be :
 þerof, sir, þou miȝt leue me.'
 At þemperour he toke leue anon, 2895
 Vnto his in he gan to gon.
 Noyse & cri he herd in þat cite :
 He gan oxy what it miȝt be.
 He hem oxed what it were,
 & what was al þat noise þere. 2900
 So mani kniȝtes he seye to armes go,
 So mani seriaunce steye to kernels þo.
 'Sir,' quap a burieys, 'bi seyn Martin,
 It beþ þe liþer Sarrazin :
 It is þe amiral Costdram, 2905
 þe nevou of þe riche soudan.
 So strong he is, & of so gret miȝt,
 In world y wene no better kniȝt ;
 For þer nis man no kniȝt non
 þat wiþ wretþe dar loken him on. 2910
 His armes alle avenimed beþ :
 þat venim is strong so þe deþ :
- ¹ MS. *aside*
- ³ MS. *feyr* with
 the *i* underdotted.
 C. 2800.
- Turnbull p. 98,
 l. 2515.
- MS. fol. 122r. a.
- C. 2824.

Thise Saresyñs haue my men quelled,
 And all this londe made bare felde,
 All bot this oon Citee
 Destroyed and brent, y telle the. 2880
 Fourty they slowe vpon a day
 Of my men, the sothe to sey.
 My men they slowe and my soñe also,
 Wherfor, leef frende, y pray the to, who offered Guy
 That thou woldest me vpon theim wreke, 2885
 And the theeues oute of my londe reke :
 My faire doughter thou shalt haue the hand of his
 With half my londe by the lawe.' daughter.
 Than answerd him sir Guy,
 And seide : 'sir, graunt mercy !' 2890

At the Emperour he toke his leue anon,
 And to his Inne he is goon. 2895
 Grete noyse and crye they herde in the Citee : Guy very soon
 Guy anone asked what that might bee.

So many knyghtes he sawe to armes goo, [p. 86] learned that the
 And as many sergeantis renne to corners thoo.
 'Sir,' quoth a burgeis, 'by seynt Martyn,
 It is the wicked hooste of Sarasyn :
 It is the Admirall Cosdram, 2905 Emir Cosdram,
 The neyew of the riche Sowdañ.

the strongest of
the enemies, was
before the city

There nys man ne knyght noon
 That in wrath darre loke him vpon. 2910
 His armes all venymed bee :
 That venym is deth, truly.

- ¹ MS. *is* In þis world nis¹ man þat he take miȝt
 MS. omits *ne* þat he ne² schuld dye anon riȝt.
 þat oþer day he dede ous sorwe anouȝ 2915
 Of þemperour sone þat he slouȝ,
 þat was³ so gode and stalworȝ kniȝt,
 þat opon hem had ȝeuen mani fiȝt.
 In þis cite so gode kniȝt was non,
 þat with wretȝe durst loke him on. 2920
- ⁴ *cheualrie* MS. Comen he is wiȝ grete cheualrie,⁴
 & wiȝ him ȝe riche king of Turkye
 Wiȝ an hundred Turkes strong :
 Beȝ non better in non lond.
 ¶ & when sir Gij herd þis 2925
 þat his ost seyde to him, y-wis,
 To his felawes he seyde anon,
- C. 2836.** 'To armes,' he seyde, 'euerichon !
 ȝe Sarrazins we willen agast.
 For godes loue, smiteȝ on fast !' 2930
 Hastiliche y-armed hij beȝ,
 Opon her stedes as foule ȝai fleȝ.
 Forȝ ȝai went & on hem smite
 Wiȝ her swerdes þat wil wel bite.
 Gij to ȝe amiral smot so, 2935
 Scheld no hauberk nas him worȝ a slo :
- MS. fol. 122r. b. þurch ȝe body he ȝaf him wounde,
 & dede he feld him on ȝe grounde.
 Sir Gij his gode swerd out drouȝ,
 þat heued fram ȝe bodi he slouȝ. 2940
 To þemperour he it haȝ y-sent,
 þat wel glad was of þat present.
- Turnbull p. 100, 1. 2567. ¶ Herhaud smot ȝe king of Turkie
⁵ *nto* MS. (Was non feller into⁵ Surrie) :
 þurch ȝe bodi he him smot, 2945
 Ded he feld him doun fot hot.
 Wiȝ þat com Tebaud prikeinde,
 In Fraunce y-bore, a kniȝt wel kinde :

In the worlde nys mañ, and he hym take might,
That he ne shulde dye anone right.

Come he is with his Chivalrye,
And with him the riche king of Turkye
With an hundred turkes in fighte stronge :
Ther' been noon better in noo londe.'

with a great
force.

ASSONE AS Guy hath herde
What his hooste to him seide,
To his felawes he seide anone,
'To armes swithe euerichone !
The sarasyñs we wolt agaste.
For goddis loue, smyte faste.'

2925

Guy and his men

2930

immediatly
sallied out.

Guy to the Admirall smote so,
That shelde ne hauberk aduailled him not a sloo :
Thurgh the body he gaue him a wounde,
That dede he felle anone to grounde.
Guy his swerde anone to him drowe,
That the heuede fro the body flowe.
To the Emperour he hath it sente,
That full glad was of that presente.
Heraude smote the king of Turkye [p. 87]
(Ther' was noon feller in all Surrye) :
Thurgh-oute the body he him smote,
That dede he felle to the grounde fote hote.
With that come Thebaude priking,
In fraunce borne, a knyght full kynde :

2935 Guy

bereft the Emir

2940 of his head,
which he sent to
the Emperour.

Herhand,

2945

Tebaude,

Wip swiche strengþe he smot Helmadan,
Al was nouȝt worþ he hadde opan. 2950

þurch his bodi þe launce glod ;
Ded he fel wip-outen a-bod.
Gauter come prikeing anon riȝt,
Of Almayne a wel gode kniȝt.
Heteliche he smot Redmadan 2955

C. 2856. (Ȝe no haue herd speke of no swiche man) :

þe bodi atvo he haþ to-deled,
þat he fel down in þe feld.

Wip þat come sir Morgadour,
þat was steward wip þemperour. 2960

Kniȝt he was gode & hardi,
Ac traitour he was, ful of envie.
He smot vnto a Sarrazin,
No halp him nouȝt his Apolin.
Now þai smitte togider comonliche, 2965

& fiȝt þai agin ardiliche.
þer men miȝt se Gij smite,

& þe Sarrazins heuedes of strike,
& wip him Herhaud also :

Boþe þai strengþed hem wele to do. 2970
þe Sarrazins þai strengþed hem for to sle,

To-hewen, & iuel to bise.
þe Sarrazins hem ȝeld gret fiȝt,

For strong þai ben, & of gret miȝt.
Wip þat come Esclandar prikeinde, 2975

A Sarrazin & of foule kinde,
þe kinges sone of Birrie,

Strong he was for þe maistrie.
Dan Tebaud he felled þo,

þurch þe bodi he dede þe launce go ; 2980
& seþþe he slouȝ a Freyns kniȝt,

In Bleyues he was born ariȝt.
Romirauȝt com forþ snelle,

A Sarrazin a strong wip elle,

Turnbull p. 101,
l. 2533.

MS. 122v. a.

With suche strenght he smote Elmadan,
That him aduailled noo thing^r he had on. 2950

Gauter^r come priking^r anone with that,
Of Almaigne a good knyght of astat. Gauter,

He began to smyte to Amodan 2955
(Thou hast not herde of a feller man) :

His body in two he hath cleft,
And dede in the felde it hath lefte.

With that come forth Morgadour^r : Morgadour,
Styward he was with the Emperour. 2960

Knyght he was good and hardy,
And traytour^r he was, and full of enuy.

He gañ to smyte to a sarasyn,
That noo-thing^r him helped Appolyn.

Than they smyte to-gider manly, 2965 all distinguished
The bataille they begynne biggely. themselves.

There men might see Guy smyte

The sarasyns heedes of at a strike,

And with him heraude also :

Bothe they strenght them wel to doo. 2970

But the Saracens
rallied;

The sarasyñs theim yiue grete fighte,
For stronge they bee, and of grete mighte.

With that come Escladar priking,

A Sarasyn he was of bigge making^r. 2975 Esklandar
slew Teband.

- Y-slawe he haþ dan Guinman, 2985
 A strong kniȝt he was & an Aleman.
 Wiþ þat come forþ an amireld,
 A Sarrazin of wicked erd,
 Dan Gauter he haþ y-slawe,
 & gode Gilmin his felawe. 2990
 When Herhaud þat of-seye þo,
 In his hert him was ful wo ;
 An amiral he smot so,
^{1 MS. *anhast*} Ded he feld him an hast¹ þo,
^{Turnbull p. 102, l. 2619.} & mani anoþer he haþ aqueld, 2995
 & adoun feld in þe feld.
 Sone so Esclandar y-seye þis,
 To awreke þe amiral lef him is.
 To Herhaud he smot heteliche,
 & he him mett hardiliche ; 3000
 Heteliche þai smiten togider þo,
 þat of her hors þai fellen bo.
 Seþþen þai drouȝ her brondes of stiel,
 & smiten togider hard & wel,
 To-hewe hauberk & scheldes also, 3005
 Gode bodis þai ben boþe to.
 Of her helmes þe flours gan fle,
 So heteliche togider smiten he.
 Herhaud goþ him driueand fast,
C. 2900. His heued to smiten of on hast. 3010
 Ac so gret socour him com þer,
 An hundred Turkes & her pouer ;
 Herhaud þai gin alle asaile,
 & neye hadde slain him in þat bataile,
^{2 Gij added over the line.} No hadde Gij² þat y-seye, þat was sorij ; 3015
 Hastiliche he com him to socourey.
 His gode brond þan drouȝ he,
 þe heued of a Sarrazin he dede of fle,
 & anoþer he dede also ;
 þe þridde to dep he dede do. 3020

slew Guimann.

An Emir

Thus thise sarasyñs with grete pride [p. 88]

Many *cristen* knygh̃tes to det̃h they leye aside. 2990

Whanne heraude hath̃ that seyn,

Therof he was noo-thing fayn.

To Amylorde he smote so,

That dede he felle to grounde tho.

slew Gauter and
Gilmin.

Herhaud

slew an Emir,

Whañ Escladar sawe this,

To awreke Amylorde leef him is.

To heraude he smote hertly,

And he him mette boldely.

but was violently
assailed by
Esclandar

3000

and others,

So egre was heraude to slee Escladar',

That, or he was any-thing' war',

An hundred turkes ther' were cõme,

And heraude aH-most they had nõme.

3010

Whan Guy sawe that, he was sory :

Hastly he gooth him to socour truly.

His good bronde in honde helde he :

The hede of a Sarasyñ he dud of flee.

3015 but Guy came
to his aid.

- Turnbull p. 108,
l. 2645. Herhaud he socourd in þat nede,
& dede him lepe opon his stede.
þe Sarrazins anon gun þai mete,
Mani on þer her liif þai lete,
MS. 122v. b. Mani on þer dyed in aiper¹ side, 3025
¹ MS. *inaip* þer
Ac þe Sarrazins wers gan bi-tide.
Sir Gij & alle his feren,
þe Griffouns þat gode weren,
Han ouer-comen & aqueld ;
To-hewen þai leyn in the feld. 3030
Toward her ost þai ben fleinge,
& Gij hem after fast folweinge ;
Ar hij þe doun were ouer gon,
Y-slawe hij ben & to-hewen ichon.
Esclandar is oway fleinde, 3035
Ouer þe dounes fast erninde,
& al to-broken² his scheld is,
² MS. *alto broken*
C. 2926. His helme al to-dassched³, y-wis.
³ MS. *alto*
dassched Gij it of-pouzt when he it seye,
þat he so lizteliche oway fleye : 3040
'Esclandar,' seyð Gij, 'wende ozain to me,
& forsoþe al siker þou be ;
Drede þe of no noþer þan of me,
Ones to iusti ich oxi of þe.'
Esclandar seyð, 'artow Gij ? 3045
Ich þe defende sikerly.
Turnbull p. 104,
l. 2671. Bi Mahoun þat ich leue opon,
Neuer no schal ich oway gon,
No neuer schal y bliþe be,
Til ich þat heued binim þe ; 3050
Bihoten ich it haue a maiden of pris,
þe soudans douhter þat wel fair is.'
C. 2943. Her steden þai turned snelle,
& to-gider þai smiten wiþ gode wille ;
Esclandar first smot Gij 3055
þurch þe scheld as kniȝt hardi ;

Heraude he socoureth weH in that nede,
And made him worthe vpon his stede.

Many were slain,

but the Saracens
had the worse.

Than Guy and heraude bothe in fere
With their felawes, that good were,
Haue discomfited and quelled
And the sarasyñs hewen in the feeld.

3030

The Saracens fled.

Guy, pursuing
them,

called upon

Esclandar, to

turn and joust
with him.

He answered that

he would haue
Guy's head for
the Soudan's
daughter.

- Gij smot him anon riȝt,
 Scheld no hauberk halp him no wiȝt;
 He smot him purch at þat chaunce
 purch þe bodi wiþ his launce. 3060
 Esclandar fleye forþ a wel gode pas,
 Sir Gij of-toke him nouȝt, þerfor wo him was;
 To his felawes he is y-go,
 Riȝt to þe cite he ȝede him þo.
 þe Sarrazins were ouer-come, 3065
 þerfore þai were bliþe, all *and* some.
 þemperour of-sent Gij him to,
 & miche honour he haþ him do.
 MS. fol. 123r. a. 'Gij,' quap he, 'þou art me dere,
 þou schalt bileue wiþ me here : 3070
 Mi feir douhter, þat is of pris,
 Ichil þe ȝiue to spouse y-wis;
 Turnbull, p. 105, 1. 2697. þou schalt ben emperour after me,
 þou art a kniȝt of gret bounte.
 Al þo þat ben to me serueinde, 3075
 Ichil þai be to þe boweinde.'
 'Gramerci,' seyð sir Gij anon;
 'A fair ȝift is þis now on.'
 þe steward come forþ bliue,
 More treytour nas non oliue; 3080
 His name was hoten Morgadour,
 God ȝif him euel auentour!
 Toward Gij he bar gret¹ ond,
 & seþþe he died purch his hond.
 Quap Morgadour, 'sir, þat wil wele be, 3085
 For Gij is curteys, gentil, & fre;
 When he schal þi douhter spousy,
 Riȝt is þat we him onoury.'
 Ac what so he seyð bifor Gij þo,
 C. 2972. ȝif he may, to deþ he wille him do. 3090
Esclandar went oway fleinde,
 Toward her ost fast prikeinde;

¹ a dot over the *t*
 in *gret*.

Thus they thanked god aȝ and soȝe,
That the Sarasyȝs were ouere-coȝe.

After a
fierce combat,

Esclandar fled
with a lance
through his body.

Guy and his
fellows returned
to the city.

3065

All were bliȝe.

The Emperour

again offered
Guy his daughter,

and promised to
make him his
successor.

But his steward,

Morgadour,

was envious at
that,

and secretly

plotted mischief
against Guy.

Esclandar,

- purch þe bodi he bar a trounsoun,
 Wip boþe honden he held him to þe¹ arsoune.
 Boþe bifore & eke bihinde, 3095
 þe blod gan out fast winde,
 His helme in þe on half honginde,
 & his visage al bledeinde.
 His scheld to held hadde he no miȝt,
 He drad him to dýe anon riȝt. 3100
 To þe soudans pauloun he come,
 þe soudan him bi-knewe anon :
 'Esclandar, when comestow ?' seyð he ;
 'In strong fiȝt þou hast y-be.
 Were þou alon at þe cite ? 3105
 Say me who haþ þus wounded þe ?'
 'Sir,' quað he, 'ichil þe telle
 Of hard tidinges wel snelle :
² s on an erasure. Y-lorn þou hast þe amiral Cosdram²
 þat leuest þe was of ani man, 3110
 & þe king of Turkie þou hast forgon,
 Of hem no tit þe neuer help non.
 MS. fol. 123r. b. & alle þe best men y-bore
 Bifor þe cite þou hast forlore.'
 þan answerd þe riche soudan, 3115
 þat hadde no gamen of þan :
 'Him is þan sum socour y-come,
 Whar-purch mi Turkes be me binome ?'
 'Sir,' quape Esclandar, 'y-wis,
 An onwrast gome y-comen þer is ; 3120
 c. 2300. Socour he haþ gret & beld,
 In þe world nis swiche a scheld³ ;
 Gij of Warwike his name it is,
 Sterner þan ani lyoun, y-wis.
 Turnbull, p. 107, 1. 2749. His strokes no may noman dreye, 3125
 þat he ne most dýe on hýe.
 Wip him he haþ an hundred kniȝtes
 Of Almayne, þe best in fiȝtes ;

all bloody,

came to the
Soudan

with the bad
news

of their losses,

and told of

Guy's valour.

þurch þe bodi þus me he smot,
Dede ich am, wele y wot.' 3130

¶ þan swore a gret op þe soudan
Bi Mahoun þat he leued opan,
þat neuer glad no worþ he
What he haue y-nome þat cite ;
For asayle he it wille do 3135
Ar þe þridde day be ago.

¹ So MS. for *herd*
or *iherd*?

Anon a spie it herd¹ þis,
þat to Gij it nold for-hele y-wis.
Sone he com to þe cite ;
Al þis to Gij þan teld he, 3140
þat þe soudan wiþ his men elle
þe cite wil aseyle snelle.

Ac þemperour wist þer-of nouzt
þat so strong tiding þer were y-brouzt.
Ac when he wist þe soþe herof, 3145

C. 3020. Ernist him þouzt, & no scof.

¶ þemperour made him bliþe þo
þat ouer-comen weren his fo,
& Gij to þemperour is y-go,
& swiþe feyr he gret him þo. 3150

Turnbull, p. 106,
l. 2775.

'Sir,' quap he, 'be bliþe & glad ;
Gode tidinges me hap ben seyd.'
þemperour of-sent his foules þo,
Oscuriis, faucouns, & ierfaukes also ;
Gon he wil to þe riuer, 3155

Him to solas & play þer.

MS. fol. 123v. a.

Seppe he of-sent of his Gregeys,
þat gode weren & curteys.
To þe riuer þai ben y-gon
Wher foules were mani on. 3160
Wiþ þat come forþ sir Morgadour,
þat steward was wiþ þemperour,
& seyd to Gij, 'mi frende dere,
Y þe loue in gode manere.'

The Soudan swore
a great oath to
take Con-
stantinople.

A spy told this to
Guy,

but the Emperor
as yet knew it not.

THE EMPEROUR was full gladde tho
That ouere-come thus was his foo.

The Emperor

Goo he woth to the Ryuere,
To pley him and to solace there.
The Emperour sente for [his fowlis] thoo, [p. 89]
Ostreyes and faukons, girfaukes also.

went a-hawking.

Sethe he sente for his knyghtes,
That good were and curteys.
To Ryuer' they been' goon
Ah, bot Guy is lefte at hoom.
Tho come to him Morgadour',
That Styward was with the Emperour.
To Guy he seide : ' my frende dere,
With herte y loue the in good manere.

Thereafter

3160

Morgadour,

feigning friend-
ship for Guy,

Ac alle þat he seyð, Gij to bitraye, 3165
 þat was wele sen in his last daye.

Non no may so wele tresoun do
 So may he þat his trust is to.
 ȝete seyð to him Morgadour,
 ‘Castels ich haue, & mani feir tour, 3170
 Riche cites, & ful strong,
 To pine wille þou hem afong ;

C. 3038. Michel y desire þi loue to haue.
 Go we togider wiþ game & plawe :
 Into þe chaumber go we baye, 3175
 Among þe maidens for to playe ;

Turnbull, p. 109,
 l. 2801.

At tables to pleye, & at ches ;
 Wele we may don it y-wis
 Bifor þi leman Clarice so fre,
 þemperours douhter briȝt of ble. 3180
 & lete we þemperour to wode go,
 To chace þe hert & þe ro.’

‘**S**ir,’ quap Gij, ‘wille we go ?
 When þou it wilt, it schal be do.’
 Into þe chaumber þai ȝede þo 3185
 Hond in hond y-fere bo.

To þe mayden þai come wel sket,
 þat curteysliche hem haþ y-gret.
 ‘Sir Gij,’ sche seyð, ‘welcome þou be !
 Cum sitt & pleye þe here wiþ me.’ 3190

C. 3050. He toke þe maiden & hir kiste :
 þat of-pouȝt þe steward vnwreste.
 He hir hadde loued mani a day,
 & wende haue spoused þat feir may.
 þe cheker þai oxy & þe meyne ; 3195
 Bifor þe maiden þan pleyen he.
 Y-sett þai han þe first game,
 þe steward it les, bi godes name.
 Sepþe þai han anoþer y-gonne,
 Anon it haþ Gij y-wonne, 3200

invited him

Moche y desire thy loue to haue,
 And therof hertly y the craue :
 And in-to the Chambre lete vs goo,
 Amonges the maydeñs some sportes to doo

3175 to have some
 pastime in the
 chamber

Before thy lemman, Clarice the free,
 Themperours doughter of bright blee,
 Whiles the Emperour is to wode goo,
 To chace the herte and the Roo.'

3180 of the Emperor's
 daughter.

Guy,

In-to the Chambre they wente thoo
 Honde in honde bothe twoo.
 To the maide they come withoute lette,
 That curteisly theim hath grette.
 'Sir' Guy,' she seide, 'welcome thou bee !
 Is it thy wille, come sitte by me.'
 He toke that mayde and hir kiste :
 That forthoughte the Styward in his breste ;
 For he hir had loued many a daye,
 Wenynge to haue spoused that faire maye.
 Than at Chequer with the meyne
 Before that maide pleyden they.
 The first game they haue sette,
 And the Styward it loste withoute lette.
 Than another anone they haue begonne,
 And that also hath Guy wonne,

3185

having been
 tenderly wel-
 comed by the
 maiden,

3190

3195 played at chess
 with the steward,

[p. 90]

and won

3200 several games.

- MS. fol. 123v. b. & þe þridde ful hastiliche.
 þe steward was sori sikerliche ;
- Turnbull, p. 110, Al mody he ros vp þo :
 1. 2827. Wroþ & sori he was bo.
 'Gij,' quap he, 'bi-leue þou here, 3205
 þiself & Clarice, þi pleye-fere,
 Al what ich come now son oze.'
 'Anon,' seyd Gij, 'it schal so be.'
 Out him went Morgadour,
 At his in he tok a chasour, 3210
 To þemperour he goþ riȝt.
 When þemperour hadde of him sizt,
 Oȝaines him he is y-gon,
 & tidinges he oxd him anon.
- C. 3066. 'Now forþ, sir steward,' he sede, 3215
 'Comestow for gode or for qued ?
 Whi comestow so prikiinge ?
 Tel it me wiþ-outen lesinge.
 Ȝif þou of Sarrazins hast herd ouȝt,
 Tel it me ; for-hele it nouȝt.' 3220
 'S'ir,' quap he, 'y schal þe telle :
 þi schame forhele y nille.
 An soudour þou hast wiþ þe,
 & wil þat þou y-schent be. 3225
 þi douhter, þat so feir is,
 Forlay he hap, for-soþe y-wis.
 Into hir bour wiþ strengþe he ȝede,
 & bi þi douhter his wille he dede.'
- Turnbull, p. 111, Ȝif þou ne me leuest, hom þou fare,
 1. 2853. ȝete þou schalt him finde þare. 3230
 þer þou miȝt him finde, y-wis,
 C. 3089 & þi douhter clippe & kisse.
 þerfore y com þe to say,
 For þi schame forhele y no may.
 Ȝif þou him finde in þat stede, 3235
 Into þi prisoun þou him lede,

And the Styward vþ roosse thoo :

Wrothe and angry he was also.

'Guy,' quoth he, 'y leue the here,

Thy self and Clarice pley in fere,

TiH that y come ayene.'

'It shalbee doo,' quoth Guy, 'certē.'

Oute wente him Morgadour,

And at the stable he toke a chasour,

And to the Emperour he gooth right.

And, whan the Emperour had of him sight :

The steward
left him,

3205

promising to
return soon ;

3210

but he went
to the Emperor

'Why comest thou so yerne priking'?

Telle me withoute lesyng.

Yf thou of the Sarasyns here aught,

Telle it me and concele naught.'

'**S**IR,' quoth he, 'y shaH the telle :

Thy shame noo lenger couere y nelle.

A Souldiour thou hast with the,

That thinketh for to shende the.

Thy doughter, that so faire is,

He hath leyn by, ywis.

In-to hir' boure with strength he yede :

By thy doughter his wille he dede.

And thou beleue me not, hoom thou fare,

And to-geder thou shalt fynde them there.'

3220

to accuse Guy

3225

of having dis-
honoured the
princess,

3230

counselling that
he should be
punished

- & in þi court þou deme him do ;
 For treitour he is, y telle þe to :
 þe more adouted þou schalt be
 Of alle þi regne, y telle þe. 3240
 þer-fore ne wonde þou no-þing
 Nouȝt for him no his helping ;
 After-ward þat he demed is,
 & þi court of þat treytour deliuerd is,
 MS. fol. 124r. a. Into Almayne ichil gon 3245
 To þemperour Reyner anon ;
 Socour fram him ichil bringe,
 & deliuer þi lond, wiþouten lesinge,
 Of alle þine dedeliche fon,
 þat þine men haue sleyn ichon.' 3250
 'W ho is þat ?' þemperour sede.
 'Gij of Warwike, so god me rede !
 þou do him nim, & binde fast,
 & in þi prisoun þou do him cast.' 3255
 Quap þemperour, 'lat now be,
 No speke nouȝt so of him to me :
 Oȝaines me misdo he nold
 Nouȝt for tventi somers of gold,
 c. 3100. No for to ben al to-hewe :
 So gode a kniȝt he is & trewe. 3260
 & ȝif he is þer-in, wele be it so :
 Wiþ hir his wille he may do ;
 For mi douhter ichim bi-hote habbe,
 Nil ich nouȝt of couenant gabbe.'
 ¶ When þe steward him hap bi-þouȝt 3265
 þat þemperour nold here him nouȝt,
 Hom to his in he is y-go,
 & aliȝt of his palfrey þo.
 Anon in-to chaumber he ȝede,
 & to Gij of Warwike he sede, 3270
 'Gij, þou art ful wele wiþ me,
 þerfore ich-il kiþen it þe :

as a traitor.

'Who is that?' the *Emperour* seide.

The Emperor

'Guy,' quoth he, and gan vpbreide.

'Anone thou him take, and bynde faste, [p. 91]

And in thy prison thou doo him kaste.'

Quoth the *Emperour*: 'lete this bee;

3255 refused to believe

For so shuld thou not speke of him to me.

the story.

Yf he haue assentted therto,

With hir his wille for to doo,

She is his, and him hir yuene y haue,

Me to socour, helpe, and saue.'

Whan the *Styward* vnderstode in his thoughte

3265 The steward,

That the *Emperour* herde it noughte,

Weth sone him forthoughte thoo,

having failed in
this plot,

And home ayene he gan goo.

Anone in-to the *Chambre* he yede,

And to Guy thise wordes he seide :

3270 returned to Guy,

- To þemperour y-teld it is,
 Bi þe lord seyn Denis,
^{*1 in added over the line.*} þat wiþ strengþe þou com *in*¹-to his bour 3275
 & has forleyn his douhter wiþ desonour.
 & ȝif he þe may ouer-go,
 He wil þe bren oþer slo.
- & ich hot þe þat þou hennes fle, 3280
 þat he nouȝt of-take þe.'
- C. 3129.** 'Bi god,' quap Gij, 'þat were wrong,
 Turnbull, p. 113,
 l. 2905. þat y schold here mi deþ afong
 For þing þat ich haue gilt non, 3285
 No neuer þouȝt it to don.
 An arnemorwe, when he out ȝede,
 Miche he me o loue bede ;
 Hou schuld ich euer siker be
 Of ani bi-hest men hotes me ? 3290
- MS.** fol. 124r. b. For þemperour me seyð þo,
 And trewelich me bihete þerto,
 þat he me wold gret worþschipe,
 & now he me wil sle wiþ schenscipe
 For þe speche of a losanger, 3295
 & of a feloun pautener.'
 Out of þe chaumber he is y-go :
 Sori & dreri he was þo.
 To his in he ȝede swiþe,
 And cleped his felawes blieue. 3300
 'Lordinges,' he seyð, 'to armes snelle !
 Here wil we no longer duelle :
 To þemperour y-wraid we beþ,
 Alle he wil don ous to þe deþ.
 Bi þe treuþe y schal our lord ȝeld, 3305
 þat heuen and erþe haueþ *in* weld,
C. 3153. Er þan we be nomen & ded,
 So mani schal dye of her ferred,

'Guy, to the Emperour tolde it is,
 By the Lorde sainte Denys,
 That with strength tho[u] come in-to his boure, 3275
 And hast defouled his doughter with dishonour.
 And if he may the come to,
 Brenne he wol the or fordoo,
 And that shuld full sore greue me ;
 Wherfor y counsaile, thou hense flee, 3280
 Leste he take greuously the,
 Yf thou befounde in this Citee.'
 'ALLAS,' QUOTH Guy, 'that were wronge,
 And y shuld here deth fonge 3285
 For thing that y gilte haue noon),
 Ne neuere thoughte it to doon).
 To day, before he oute yede,
 Gretly he me loued, as he seide.'

and advised him
 to flee from the
 Emperor, who in
 consequence of a
 calumny was
 resolved to slay
 him.

Guy, filled with
 indignation,

Oute of the Chambre he is goo : [p. 92]
 Sory and heuy he was thoc.
 To his Inne he yede, y you telle,
 And cleped to him his felawes aH. 3300
 'Lordingis,' he seide, 'arme we vs at this tyde ;
 For here noo lenger we wol abide.
 To the Emperour tolde it is,
 So that he wol vs slee, withoute mys.

went to
 tell the news to
 his fellows.

And, or we bee take or dede,
 Many of them shul dey to their mede.'

Turnbull, p. 114,
l. 2931.

þat it worþ aboutȝ wel strong
þat ich am bi-wrayd wrong !' 3310

To armes þai went wiþ þat ichon ;
Out of þe cite þai ben y-gon,
& went toward þe heþen men,
Wiþ þem to holden & to ben,
To help þe heþen men ichon. 3315

Wiþ þat com þemperour anon :
Fram þe riuer he come rideinge,
& wiþ his folk fast prikeinge ;
Feir weder it was, & miri also,
þe briȝt armes he seye þo. 3320

¶ þemperour hem seye, & knewe Gij,
For he come hem swiþe neye.
At an herhaud þan asked he,
'This armed folk, what may þis be ?'
'Sir,' quap he, 'it is Gij, 3325

þat in wretþe fram þe wil parti ;
Vnto þe soudan he wil fare,
& wirche þe sorwe & michel care
þurch wraying þat teld him is :
Wele y wot þat soþe it nis. 3330

Wele it semeþ þat wroþ is he ;
Al armed on his stede ich him se.'

C. 3175.

When þemperour herd þis,
Alle droupeninde he was y-wis,

MS. fol. 124v. a.
Turnbull, p. 115,
l. 2957.

He gan to prike, & þat anon : 3335

As hauk þat fleyþe his hors gan gon.

After Gij loude he gradde þo :

'Abide & speke me now to !

For godes loue lete now be ;

Whi wiltow, sir, go fro me ? 3340

ȝif ich ouȝt haue agilt to þe,

For godes loue þou say it me ;

Be it in dede oþer in speche

That ani þe han agilt, y þe biseche,

To armes with that they wente echoon,
 And oute of the Citee they bee goon.
 They wente toward the hethen men,
 As with them to holde and to been.

They armed
 themselves,
 and left the city,
 to go over to the
 heathen.

WITH THAT come the Emperour¹ riding:
 Fro the Ryuer he was comyng.

Faire weder it was, and mery day also,
 The brighte armes he sawe thoo.
 Whan the Emperour theim sey,
 He hyed fast, til he come theim ney.
 Of an herauce than asked he,
 Thise armed knightes what they bee.
 'Sir,' quoth he, 'it is Guy,
 That in wrath fro the woH departi,² truly.
 To the Sowdan he woH nowe fare,
 And werke the moche sorowe and kare.'

But in their way,
 3320
 they met the
 Emperor,
 who, astonished,

3325

Whanne the Emperour herde this,
 All mournyng he was, y-wys.
 He gynneth to prike, and that anone,
 His hors as fast, as he might goon.
 After Guy he cleped thoo :
 'Sir Guy,' he seide, 'noo farther' thou goo.
 For goddis loue lete nowe bee,
 And abide stille with me.
 And if y haue ought offended the,

3335 rode after Guy,

[p. 93]

and asked

3340

what he had to
 complain of,

¹ Empererour MS. ² departi altered from *departe* MS.
 WARWICK.

To þi wille it schal amended be, 3345

& topon al oper y loue þe.

Wele ich wene þat þe soudan, y-wis,

To whom al Percie atended is,

After þe hap sent : ich vnderstond so.

He þe schal habbe, & y forgo. 3350

Gold & siluer he may ȝiue þe,

& feffe þe wiþ mani a riche cite ;

þerfore þou wilt wiþ him be,

& strongliche holden oȝaines me.'

'Sir,' quap sir Gij to þemperour, 3355

C. 3200. **S** 'No was ich neuer þi traitour,

And ȝif god wil, y nil nouȝt be,

þerwhiles þe lif is in me.

Me was y-teld biforn now riȝt

Of on þat is þi priue kniȝt, 3360

Turnbull, p. 116,
l. 2983.

þat þou no hadest to don wiþ mi seruise,

& þat y þe serue wiþ feyntise ;

And þat ich was biwrayd to þe

(For þi nold ich no longer here be),

And þat þou wost do me to-hewe, 3365

& mine barouns, þat ben so trewe.

For þi y þouȝt þat y go scholde

To hem þat mi seruise ȝeld me wold ;

Ac for al Damas & þat cuntre

Nold ich haue holden oȝaines te.' 3370

¶ þemperour þan him nome

Bitvene his armes, & seyð anon,

'Nay, sir Gij,' he seyð, 'bi seyn Denis,

It no was nouȝt so, y-wis.

Mi dere frende Gij, oȝain þou go 3375

(Lordinges, barouns, biddeþ him so) ;

For to þine wille it is alle,

Alle þat min is, *and* ben schal.

MS. fol. 124v. b.

Ac biwrayed þou war to me,

& þerfore haue he maugre ! 3380

At thy wille it amended shalbee.'

or if he was
going over to the
Sultan,

to be made a rich
man.

'Sir,' quoth Guy to the Emperour,
'Was y neuere yet traytour',
Ne, if god wol, noon wolbee,
Whiles the lif is with-in me.
Me was tolde before nowe right
Of oon that is thy priue knyght,

3355 Guy answered

3360 that he had
been told

that the Emperour
made light of his
service.

That thou woldest me aH to-hewe,
And my baroñs, that bee so trewe.
Therfor y thoughte that y serue wolde
Suche oon that my seruyse yelde sholde.'

3365

The Emperour
embraced him,

'My dere frende Guy, ayene thou goo
(Lordingis, baroñs, bidde him also);
For at thy wille it is aH,
AH that myn is, and bee shaH,'

3375 and begged him
not to believe it.

3380

Neuer eft worþ non loued of me
 þat ouzt sigge bot gode of þe.
 þemperour þan to Gij seyð,
 ‘þi wille þou do bi þat mayde.’
 Sir Gij kist þemperour þo, 3385
 & to þe cite þai ben y-go.

Turnbull, p. 117,
 l. 3009.
¹ or *Bitrayd*, a
 being altered
 from *e*?

þo wist wele Gij bi þan,
 Bitreyd¹ him hadde his foman;
 Ac no semblaunt þerof he no made,

C. 3222. No no þing to him seyde. 3390

An armorwe erliche
 þemperour aros, sikerliche;
 Anon he seyð to Gij his speche:
 ‘Herken to me, y þe biseche.

In þis morning anon 3395

We worþ aseyled of our fon,
 Of Sarrazins þat misbileued be;
 Alle for soþe y telle it to þe.
 þe soudan himselue wil þer be.

A spie for soþe teld it me, 3400

þat hij þe cite wil asayli,
 & þat hij þennes nil parti,
 Al fort he haue nome þis cite,
 Or þat it destrued be.’

þemperour seyð, ‘sir Gij þe fre, 3405

Als so þou wilt it schal be.

þe cite alle op þe y do

Wip Cristes blisceing þer-to.

þif hij ous seyl we schul ous were;

þe cite is strong, þai mow it nouzt dere.’ 3410

Gij þat constable cleped him to,

þat gode kniȝt was, & wise also:

Turnbull, p. 118,
 l. 3035.

Tristor he hete wip þe berd blowe,
 Lord & douke of Almayne, y trowe.

‘Sir Tristor,’ he seyð, ‘listen to me: 3415

Aseyled we worþ, siker þou be.

Also the Emperour to Guy seide,
 'Thy wille to doo by that maide.'
 Guy kiste the Emperour tho,
 And ayene to the Citee they been) goo.
 Tho wiste Guy weft by than),
 Betrayed him had his fooman).

3385

Guy knew then
 who had betrayed
 him.

On morowe, fuH sikirly,
 The Emperour aroosse eerly.
 To him seide Guy this speche :
 'Herken) to me, sir, y the beseche.
 In this mornynge anoon
 Assailed we shalbee of our' foon),

Next morning

[p. 94] 3395

the Emperor
 was informed

of the new assault
 intended by the
 Saracens.

And the Sowdan) him-self woH there bee ;
 For a spye it tolde me,
 That this Citee he woH assaille,
 And neuere thense departe, withoute faille,
 TiH he haue take the Citee,
 Or that it discomfited bee.'
 The Emperour seide : 'sir Guy the free,
 As thou wolt so shaH it bee.
 AH the cure vpon) the y doo
 With cristes blissing' and myn therto.'

3400

3405

The Emperor
 said that all
 should be done
 at Guy's will.

Guy the Constable cleped him to,
 That good knyght was, and wise also :
 Trystour he highte with berde bolde,
 Lorde and duke of Samary holde.
 'Sir Tristour,' he seide, 'vnderstonde me :
 Assailed we shalbee, y telle the.

Guy consulted
 with the
 constable,

Tristor,

3415

- þer-of þou most birede þe,
 3if we wille were þis cite,
 Oþer we wille oʒain hem te,
 At papes that destrued be, 3420
 & mete we hem þer on þe doune,
 Acumbre hem & legge hem doune.
 MS. fol. 125r. a. 'Sir,' anon seyð the *constable*,
 C. 3251. 'þis ich speche schal be stable.
 Do þan grede þurch þe cite 3425
 þat alle redy armed be,
 Alle þat armes may welde,
 And who so þat feyneþ for couward be helde.'
 Bi þe morwe þai ben armed wel,
 Bi tale .xx. thousand hauberks of stiel, 3430
 Out of þe cite þai ben y-go
 Wiþ gret noise & din also.
 'Lordinges,' quap Gij, 'herkenep to me
 3e þat here asembled be,
 Of 3our kinde þat is y-slawe, 3435
 Of edwite & of missawe,
 þat ous is don, thenke we þer-on,
 & baldeliche aseyl we our fon ;
 Turnbull, p. 113, For Sarrazins ous aseyle wille,
 l. 3061. Alle for soþe y 3ou telle. 3440
 We wil hem mete wiþ spere & scheld
 At þe narwe pape bi-tven þe held.
 Now biþenkeþ 3ou wele to don,
 & awreke 3our lond of 3our fon.
 Of 3our londes & 3our citez, 3445
 þat destrud & wasted beþ,
 3ou to awreke bi-þenkeþ 3ou,
 & strongliche aseyleþ hem now.
 Bot 3e were 3ou wele & bliue,
 & hij mow 3ou of þe feldes drine, 3450
 Alle we ben ded oþer nome,
 & in þraldome euer more wone.

Therfor' thou must aduise the,
 How we may best kepe this Citee,
 Or we shaH ayenst theim goo,
 And kepe them by patthes to and fro : 3420
 Mete we may theim on the Downe,
 And theim accombre and ley to grounde.'
 ' Sir,' seide the Constable,
 ' AH thy speche y holde it auayleable.
 Doo than crye thurgh the Citee 3425
 That aH men redy armed bee,
 AH that arnes may welde,
 And bestirre them with spere and shelde.'
 Anone they been aH armed wele, [p. 95] Next morning
 Twenty thousand, in hauberkis of stele, 3430
 And oute of the Citee they bee goo
 With grete noyse and booste also.
 ' Lordinges,' quoth Guy, ' herken to me
 Ye that here assembled bee :
 The despite that they to you haue doon, 3435
 For goddis loue, nowe thinke theron,
 And assaille theim with good wille ;
 For, forsothe, y shaH you telle,
 The right is oure : bee not aferde,
 Let eche of vs kepe his herde, 3440
 And we woll mete theim with spere and shelde
 In narowe patthes by the feelde.'

how to meet
the Saracens.

Next morning

Guy exhorted his
men to assail the
enemies valiantly

and not let the

Saracens destroy
them.

- ¹ MS. *hen* For þi mete we wiþ heim¹ sone,
 & strengþe ous alle wele to done ;
- C. 3276.** & ich me self wil wiþ 3ou go ; 3455
 Y nil 3ou feyle neuer mo.’
 Wele spekeþ now Sir Gij,
 & alle þai siggeþ, ‘gramerci!’
 To þe pas of þe hulles þai ben y-come,
 & þe Sarrazins han vnder-nome, 3460
 & seye þe cuntres & þe feld
 Wiþ briȝt brini *and* wiþ scheld.
 Þe soudan cleped after Helman,
 þat deined fle for no man ;
- Turnbull, p. 120,
 l. 3087. He was coraious & gode kniȝt, 3465
 & michel adouted in euerich fiȝt.
 MS. fol. 125r. b. ‘Sir king,’ quap he, ‘come to me.
 Wiþ .xx. þousende Turkes, ich hot þe,
 The Cristen ȝe schul aseyle anon.
 Loke ȝe nim hem oþer slen ichon ; 3470
 Opon 3on hulle þai ben, lo ;
 Gret harm þai han ous y-do.’
 þe king forþ went wiþ his men ichon,
 Wiþ strengþe þe helde þai vnder-nome ;
 Wiþ strengþe þai wene þe slade ouer-go ; 3475
 Ac gret combraunce hem com furst to.
- C. 3300.** At þe entring of þe pas Gij² gan to grede,
 ‘Helpeþ, lordinges, alle our ferrede !
 Biþenkeþ 3ou to winnen wele.
 & hij ozaines 3ou vndernim þe hille, 3480
 Yuel ous worþ þan bi-go,
 Bot goud ous on þenke³ þat al may do ;
 þai ben bi-neþen⁴ & we aboue.
 Amidde þe pas þai ben to-gider come,
 & asaileþ hem smerteliche ; 3485
 & to-gider we go now commonliche :
 þroweþ wiþ stones, *and* bowes scheteinge,
 Launces, swerdes, & dartes kerueinge,

² added over the
 line in another
 hand.

³ MS. *ouþenke*.

⁴ *ne* on an erasure.

Al they sey : 'graunt mercy !

WeH speketh nowe sir' Guy.'

To the patthes they bee come :

The Sarasyns they haue vndernome.

3460

They sawe the Contrees, fryth and felde

With brighte helmes, spere and shelde.

THE SOWDAN cleped of Tyre Elmadan :

The Soudan first
sent Helman

He ne wolde flee for noo man ;

He was corageous and good knyght,

3465

And moche he was dredde in fight.

'Elmadan,' he seide, 'come with me.

With twenty thousand knightis, y bidde the,

with 20,000 Turks

The *cristen* ye shaH assaille anone.

Loke that ye take theim echone.'

3470

against the city.

At the entre of the patthes Guy gan to ryde,

And the Sarasyns deth sore he appliede.

To his felawes he spake tho :

[p. 96]

'Lordinges,' he seide, 'bere you weH ayenst *your* foo.

Guy exhorted his
men to defend
their position on
a hill.

They bee benethe and we aboue.

Lete vs vpon theim smyte, for goddis loue.'

To theim they launceth egirly,

3485

And they to theim greuously.

- Smiteþ wiþ swerdes & speres y-grounde,
 Scheteþ wiþ piles & ȝif hem deþ wounde.' 3490
- Turnbull, p. 121,
 l. 3118. Mani Sarrazin þer y-slawe is ;
 þer doþ Gij as þe riȝt wise.
 Into þe narwe hij come, hem to lett,
 Bi hundredes foure¹ þai aseyl hem sket ;
 Bi hundred & bi þousende,² 3495
 þai ben þe Sarrazins quellinde.
 Gij smot on þis side & on þat :
 Nas þer non þat his dint sat.
- ³ on added over
 the line. ¶ Ermine he smot on ³ purch þe scheld ;
 Almost he feld him in þe feld. 3500
 þan come Auþer ouer þuert,
 A Sarrazin modi of hert :
- ⁴ Herhau? Ermine⁴ smot him on þe helme an heyȝe,⁵
 þat he cleue him to þe teþ ;
⁵ heyȝe on an
 erasure, the last e
 being indistinct. Al ded he made him on þe grounde to lie. 3505
 Wiþ þat come þe king of Nubie ;
 Toward Herhauð he come prikeinde,
 & Gij him was ozain cominde.
 Wiþ grete strengþe sir Gij him smot
 þat he feld him anon fot hot. 3510
- MS. fol. 125v. a. When þe douke of Tire þat y-seþ,
 His men dye on so reweliche deþ
 (An hond he held a dart kerueinde,
 þe Cristen þer-wiþ preteninde),
 He forþ ȝede, & smot a kniȝt, 3515
 þat ded he feld him auon riȝt.
- Turnbull, p. 122,
 l. 3139. When Gij o Warwike þat y-seye,
 þiderward he drouȝ him swiþe neye :
 A gode dart on hond he bar,
 & to him he launced heteliche þar. 3520
 þer-wiþ he smot Ebban þe king,
 þat ded he fel wiþouten letting.
 þe Sarrazines hij to-heweþ & quelleþ,
 Bi þe doun hij gredeþ & ȝelleþ.

Many a sarasyn there sleyn is ;
There doth Guy as the wise, y-wis.

which they did

successfully.

Guy smote down

Than come forth the king^e of Nubye,
A stronge knyght and a manly :
Toward heraude he come priking,
And Guy him sawe weft comyng.
With so grete strength to him he smote,
That dede he felled him, god it wote.

3505

the king of Nubia,

3510

and the duke of
Tyre,

and others.

- C. 3331.** **W**hen þe soudan seye his folk dye, 3525
 Bi ten, bi tvelue, in þe waye,
 He cleped to *him* þe king of Nubye,
 þat was ful of felonie.
 ‘Sir king,’ he seyð, ‘sest tow nouȝt
 Hou mine men ben to deþ y-brouȝt? 3530
 Descumfit & y-slawe hij beþ,
 þe bodis ded wele ȝe seþ.
 þis Cristen our men to deþ doþ;
 Ac bi Cariot y swere mi noþ,
 & bi Apolyn þe grete, 3535
 Bi Ternagaunt, & bi Mahoun þe swete,
 Bot we of *hem* be wreken swiþe,
 No worþ y neuer glad no bliþe,
 Bot we hem aseyle biginne,
 & þe hille wiþ strengþe awinne. 3540
 An hundred we ben oȝain *hem* on,
- C. 3346.** & al we schul hem nimen anon.’
 þe helden þai nimeþ about strongliche,
 & þe Cristen aseyl stalworþliche
 At þe brode pape & narwe also; 3545
 þe Gregeys wele werd hem þo.
 On þe Cristen þai gun smite,
 þe Sarrazins, boþe miche & lite,
 & our men hem werd wel
- ¹ the *r* added over the line. Wiþ scharpe speres & grounden ¹ stiel: 3550
 Wiþ axes & swerdes y-grounde,
 Wiþ gisarmes þai ȝif deþes wounde.
 ¶ þe soudan forþwiþ alder-farst
 On þe Cristen smot wel fast;
 On heye on helmes he hem smot 3555
 Wiþ his fauchon þat wele bot.
 Toȝaines Gij he smot þo,
 & seyð ‘war, ich-il þe slo!’
 Gij he smot so ouer þuert,
 þat he was sumdel y-hert; 3560
- MS. fol. 125v. b.

Whan the Sowdan sawe his folke so dey, 3525
 By ten, by twelue lye in the wey,
 He eleped the kyng of Ermonye,
 That was full of felonye.
 'King,' he seide, 'ne seest thou nought
 How my men to deth bee brought? 3530

The Soudan sent
 the king of Nubia

against them,

Bot we on theim bee awreke swithe,
 Ne shaft y neuere bee gladde nor blithe.
 Wo! we theim assaille and fresshly begynne,
 And the hylle of them with strength wyne? 3540 to take the hill.
 An hundred we bee ayenst oon;
 All we shal take anon.

The Greeks
 defend the hill

Vpon the *cristen* they gan smyte,
 The Sarasyns, bothe moche and lyte,
 And the *cristen* defended theim wel
 With sharpe wepen grounde with steele. 3550 desperately.

The Sowdan come than with all haste, [p. 97]
 And at the *cristen* he smote full faste.

The Soudan and
 Guy

Ayenst Guy he ganne goo,
 And seide: 'yelde the, traytour, y shaft the sloo.'
 To Guy he smote with grete course,
 That him was some dele the worse; 3560

met in mortal
 fight.

Ac Gij wiþ strengþe to him smot
 Wiþ his swerd þat wele bot.
 Wel strong was þat ich fiȝt,
 Ac þe soudan wered him wiþ miȝt.
 Wharto schuld ich ȝou telle more? 3565
 þe Sarrazins ouer-comen wore :

C. 3355. Wele haþ Gij don þat day,
 As gode kniȝt & verray.

Turnbull, p. 124,
 l. 3191.

At a pas he houed riȝt,
 As a kniȝt of gret miȝt; 3570
 A gisarme he bar kerueinde,
 He smot bifore & bi-hinde.
 þe Sarrazins so he agast,
 Al þat he smot to grounde he cast.

His scheld he hadde forlore,
 To-hewe it lay his fet bifore.
 So mani Sarrazin he slouȝ þat day,
 þat ich on oþer ded lay; 3580
 So mani to ded þer he dede,
 þat þe hepe lay to his girdel stede.

C. 3369. ¶ Who so seye þan Herhaud fiȝt,
 Of a gode kniȝt ȝelp he miȝt.
 A damsax he bar on his hond : 3585
 Al þat he rauȝt to grounde he wond ;
 Sarrazins he slouȝ mo þan sexti,
 & Gij an hundred & fourti.

Herhaud þat day so sore swong,
 þat purch his mouȝe þe fom it sprong; 3590

¹ MS. *alto hewe*

Al to-hewe¹ was his helme,
 þe blod ran out als a welme.
 What schuld y make tale mucche ?
 þe Sarrazins þai slowen strongliche ;
 Ac euer he was gode, apliȝt, 3595
 Gij of Warwike michel of miȝt,

And Guy with strength to him smote
With his swerde that full harde bote.

Guy did well.

To a place he wente, and howed there :

A Gesharme in his honde he did bere.
The Sarasyis so there he agaste :
Añ that he smote to grounde felle faste.
So faste the sarasyns him leyde vpon,
That his horse they slowe he sate vpon.
His shelde also he hath lore :
To-hewe it laye his fete before.

He fought amid

3575

So many sarasyns he to deth dede,
That they ley on hepe to his girdeñ stede.
Who that had seen heraude than fighte,
Of a good knyght he speke myghte.
A deuonyssñ axe he bare in his honde :
Añ that he raughte to grounde wende.

a heap of the
dead.

Herhaud also

3585

did prodigies.

Heraude so sore that daye swanke,
That thurgh his mouthe the fome sanke.

3590

And he that was so good a knyght,
Guy of Warrewik of grete myght,

3595

Guy did most.

Turnbull, p. 125,
l. 3217.

More dede þan ani oþer :
His stroke was heui so a foper.

Gij and his feren also

Als lyouns þai fouzten þo, 3600

MS. fol. 126r. a.

& the Gregeys forþ wiþ hem,

C. 3382. þai wered hem as douhti men.

Weynes & cartes þai han y-nome

Mo þan fiften þousende atte frome.

Y-ioined hij han þe gret piles, 3605

GINNES þai made on selcoupe wise,

Sum piles scharpe kerueinde,

Al aboute so mani stondinde,

þat ich ne can þe noumbre telle,

Noiþer in rime no in spelle. 3610

þer nas man þat þer neye come,

þat he ne was to-corwen anon.

So griseliche be þe engins,

For to sle þe Sarrazines,

In ich half y-sett arawe, 3615

¹ r added over
the line.

Scharpe soules down of þe hulle y-drawe.¹

þer-mid þai hewe þe gret stonis,

Bi-hewe quarre for þe nonis,

So gret so tventie men miȝt drawe,

To slen hem of þe hepen lawe. 3620

Swiche a þousende for-smiten þai be,

þat neuer after schullen y-the ;

Turnbull, p. 126,
l. 3243.

Wel iuel hem is bifallen þare,

C. 3401. Ded þai ben wiþ sorwe & care.

Wharto schuld ich tale telle? 3625
þe soudan lepe on hors ful snelle.

Gret onde he hadde to Gyoun,

& to Herhaud, his compaynoun,

For hij han slawe so fel of his.

He sat on an hors of pris, 3630

Wiþ gret hete he smot to Gij,

Opon his helme, sikerly,

Euere smote to oon) and other':
 His strokes were heuy as a vother'.
 And Guyes felowes also
 As lyons they foughite thoo,
 And their' souldiers with theim
 Defended theim as men).

[p. 98]

3600

His companions

and the Greeks
also acted like
doughty men.They constructed
enginesto slay the
Saracens,of whom thou-
sands perished.

With that come ayene the Sowdan,
 And with him many an hethen man).
 He bare grete hatrede to Guyoun),
 And to heraude, his compaignyon).
 Guy was ware of his comyng':
 To horse he lepe withoute letting'.
 So harde the sowdan) smote to Guy
 Vpon) the helme, sikirly,
 WARWICK.

3625

The Soudan

3630

smote Guy,

P

- þat he feld þat o quarter.
 To Gij he seyð a bismer :
 ‘ Y-sestow, lord ? bi Apolin, 3635
 þat was a strok of a Sarrazin !’
 Gij to þe soudan smot þo,
 His helme no was him worþ a slo :
 Resares euen forþ þe breyn
 Helme & fesse he carf wiþ meyn. 3640
 þan he seyð to him a bismer :
 ‘ Mahoun halp þe litel þer !
 Bodi & soule no nouzt þer-of
 No is nouzt worþ a lekes clof.
 MS. fol. 126r. b. Hou so it go of mi wounde, 3645
 Of Mahoun þou hast litel help y-founde.
 Er þou scorndest me,
 Of mi wounde þou madest þi gle :
 Turnbull, p. 127, Leche gode schal ich haue,
 1. 3269. þat mi wounde schal to hele drawe ; 3650
 þou hast a croun schauen to þe bon ;
 Tomerwe þou miȝt sing anon.
 Wele þou þouȝtest to ben a prest,
 When þou of swiche a bischop order berst !’
 Now biginneþ þat gret fiȝt ; 3655
 Bi þre, bi four, adoun riȝt,
 þe Sarrazins ben ouer-come,
 C. 3405. Oway fleinde þai ben some.
 þe niȝt comeþ, þe day is go,
 þe Sarrazins han ful michel wo ; 3660
 For so mani y-slawe þer be
 (So seyð þe folk of þat cuntre),
 þat men miȝt wade ouer þe scho hem
 In þe blod þat of hem kem.
 So miche folk þer was y-slawe þo, 3665
 þat fiftene forlong men miȝt go,
 þat þei he kept him neuer so,
 He most nedes opon men go,

That of his creest he felled a *quarter*,
 And to Guy he seide in a busemer':
 'What seist thou, lording? by Appolyn,
 That was a stroke of a Sarasyn.'
 And Guy to the Sowdan smote so,
 That his helme auailed him not a sloo:
 Streight euen forth to the brayne
 Helme and flesshe he karf with mayne.
 And tho he seide in a busemer':
 'Mahounde helped the liteH there.

3635 and twitted him
 of the wound,

3640 but Guy bettered
 the blow,

How so it fare of my wounde,
 In Mahounde thou hast liteH helpe founde.
 Right nowe thou scorned me,
 And of my wounde thou madest thy glee:
 Lechyng good shaH y haue,
 That shaH my wounde hele and saue;
 And thou hast a crowne shorne to the boon:
 Now thou may synge masse before noon.
 Thou maist bee nowe Mahound's preest,
 Whan [thou] suche a bisshopps hode werest.'

3645

3650

and the reproach
 also.

Thanne were the Sarasyns ouerecome, [p. 99]
 Away fleyng they wente some.

The Saracens are
 vanquished.

When night came,

So many sarasyns sleyn there bee,
 That fiftene forlange men might see
 Men wade aboute the hemme of their shoon
 In the blode that of theim coom.
 So moche slaughter in eche side was thoo,
 That .xv. myles men must goo

3665 the dead bodies
 covered 15
 furlongs.

- Oþer on fot, oþer on hond,
 Oþer opon arm coruen wiþ brond. 3670
 ¶ Wiþ þat come an amiral prikeinge,
 Newe dubbed he was, wiþ-ouȝten lesing ;
 To þe soudan he is y-come,
 þurch þe bodi he haþ woundes some.
 ' Sir,' he seyð, ' hennes we go : 3675
 No sestow al our folk slo ?
 Bi þousendes þou sest hem to deþ ligge ;
 Our godes ous hateþ, for soþe to sigge.
 þou sest Mahoun ne Apolin
 Be nouȝt worþ þe brestel of a swin. 3680
 Anon riȝtes wiþdrawe þou þe,
 & to þi pauloun þou fle ;
 Alle þe wounded þou do wiþ þe lede ;
 ȝete þai may þe help & rede.
 þi rereban þou do of-sende ; 3685
 To awreke [þe] þou haue in mende.'
 Anon þai hem wiþdrawe and ben ouer-come ;
 Sori þai ben alle & some.
 MS. fol. 126v. a. þe soudan dede biforn him bring
 Alle his godes, wiþouten lesing : 3690
 Toward hem he is wel wroþ,
 Do he wil hem harm & loþ :
 ' A ȝe¹ fals godes vnwreste !
 Sone ȝou tit a liþer² feste. 3695
 Oȝain ous ȝe ben of wicked mode :
 Schame ȝe don ous & no gode.
 ȝe don ous alder-werst to spede
 When þat we han mest nede.
 Fy, fy,' he seyð, ' on [þe], Apolin !
 Turnbull. p. 129, ȝou schalt haue wel iuel fin, 3700
 I. 3321.
 & þou, Ternagaunt, also :
 Michel schame schal com ȝou to ;
 & þou, Mahoun, her alder lord,
 þou nart nouȝt worþ a tord !

Turnbull, p. 128,
I. 3295.

¹ ȝe on an
erasure.
² MS. *alither*

Either vp fote, or vp honde,
Or vp man sleyn with bronde.

An Emir, himself
wounded, came
riding to the
Soudan,

and advised him
to withdraw to
his pavilion.

This done,

THOO DUDE the Soudan before hyⁿ bringe
AH his godd^{is}, withoute lesyng:

3690 the Soudan
ordered his gods
to be brought.

Toward theim he was fuH wrothe.

Euery dele he to-rende his clothe,

And seide: 'ye false godd^{is} vntruste,

Shame ye doo vs and grete bruste.

Ayenst vs ye bee of wikked moode:

3695

Sorowe ye doo vs, and noo goode.

Whan we haue to you moste nede,

Than doo ye vs worste spede.

Fye, fye on the, thou Appolyn!

Thou shalt haue a fuH euyH fyn,

3700

And thou, Termagant, also:

Moche sorowe come the to;

And thou, Mahound, their' aller' Lorde,

Thou art not worthe a mouse torde!

He reproached
them with
ingratitude,

þer-fore þou it schalt abigge 3705
 Wiþ staues gret opon þi rigge.'

So he gan his godes to cloute,
 þat þe erþe dined aboute. 3710
 Her armes & legges he to-tizt,
 & cleped hem wroches anon riȝt :
 'Godenes in ȝou nas neuer y-founde,
 No more miȝt þan in an hounde.'
 Bi þe fet he hem out drouȝ, 3715
 And dede hem schame riȝt anouȝ.

Gij dede clepe her cheueteȝn
 Wiþ gode will & hert feȝn :

- C. 3450.** 'Lordinges,' he seyde, 'god y-þonked be !
 Feir grace so habbe we, 3720
 þat þe Sarrazins ben ouercome.
 Wende we to þe cite atte frome.'
 & when þai ben comen oȝen,
 To þemperour welcom þai ben,
 & nameliche Gij, þe gode kniȝt, 3725
 Mest was worpschipe in þat fiȝt.
 ¶ When þat y-seye Morgadour,
 þat steward was wiþ þemperour,
 þat Giȝ biwreyed vnwrastliche,
 þat þemperour loued so miche, 3730
 He bigan for to asay
 Hou he miȝt Gij bi-tray.
 O felonie he haȝ him bi-þouȝt ;
 Of swiche no haue ȝe herd nouȝt :
 He þouȝt in his wille þo, 3735
 þat Gij o message schuld go.
 In swiche þouȝt & swiche wille
 An while he held him stille ;
 Anon he went to þemperour,
 & seyde, 'sir, *par* amour, 3740

Turnbull, p. 130,
 l. 3347.

MS. fol. 126v. b.

- Therfor thou shalt it abigge 3705
 With harde strokes vpon thy rigge.
 He toke a good hawthorne, that by him dud ligge, [p. 100]
 And beleide his goddis wombe and Rigge.
 So he beganne his goddis cloute, clouted them,
 That grounde deoned all aboute. 3710
 Their armes and legges he all to-twighte,
 And cleped them wrecches of vnmighte :
 'In you was neuere goodnesse founde,
 Ne nomore might than in an hounde.'
 By the fete he theim oute drowe, 3715 and cast them
 And did theim shame enowe. out.
 GUYE cleped to him his chiefenteyn,
 With good wille to him gan seyn : Guy
 'Lorde god, thanked he bee ! and his men
 A Faire grace nowe haue we, 3720
 That the sarasyns bee thus ouerecome.
 Wende we to the Citee nowe sone.'
 Whan they to the Cytee were come ayene,
 To the Emperour welcome they been,
 And namely Guy, the good knyght, 3725 He was welcomed
 Most was worshipped, and that was right. and worshipped
 Whan that sawe Morgadour, Only Morgadour
 That Styward was with the Emperour,
 That Guy was come home thoo,
 And that the Emperour loued him so, 3730
 Than he bethoughte him, the sothe to sey,
 How he might Guy best betraye.
 On felonye he bethoughte thoo,

That Guy shulde on message goo.

Thanne he seide to the Emperour : [p. 101]
 'Sir,' quoth he, 'paramour', 3740 He advised the
 Emperor

þe soudan haþ his folk y-sent : 3745
 Into al peyni his sond is sent.
 þer nis noiþer ȝing no eld
 þat armes may bere & wepen weld,
 Alle he is haueþ of-sent,
 þe to bisege verrament. 3750
 ¶ To him þou þi sond sende,
 Alle þi wille, word & ende.'

'Who,' he seyð, 'durst þider wende?' 3755
 'Sir Gij, a kniȝt hardi & hende
 Of þine house, & þat y plight :
 Gij of Warwike of gret miȝt,
 Herhaud of Arderne, þat oþer best :
 On hem tveye ȝe mow ȝou trest. 3760

Turnbull, p. 131,
 l. 3373.

C. 3500.

To þe soudan þou sende þine kniȝtes bold,
 & say þou wilt wiþ him a day hold
 Of acord in swiche manere.'
 'Sir steward,' seyð þemperere,
 'Toward Gij þou berst iuel wille : 3765
 He no schal nouȝt go ; þerof be stille.
 Ac mine barouns ichil of-sende,
 & wite who wille þider wende.'
His barouns he haþ of-sent :
 Ouer alle his lond þai ben y-went, 3770
 þat þai schuld to þemperour wende.
 To hem he seyð, 'mi leue frende,
 Ich wold sende to the soudan,
 ȝif ich wist euer bi wham.
 To him to sende ich am in wille, 3775
 Wiþ him to acord loude oþer stille,

Yf thy wille bee, herken me :
 Good counsaile y shaft yiue the.'
 'Now lete see,' quoth the Emperour.
 'Vnderstonde me,' quoth Morgadour.
 'The sowdan hath for his folke sente :
 In-to aH paynym the sonde is wente.

3745

So moche folke he hath for-sente,
 The to besege verament.

3750

To him, y rede, thou sende thy sonde
 In sauacion of the and aH thy londe,
 That loue and pees bee betwene you two,
 Tih aH this rancour bee a-goo.'

to send a
 messenger to the
 Soudan,

'Who durste,' quoth the Emperour, 'thider wende ?

'Sir, a good knyght hardy and henle

Of thy house, y the aplighte,

Guy of Warrewik of grete mighte,

naming Guy and
 Herhaud.

And heraude, that other the beste :

In them two thou mav weH truste.'

3760

The Emperour seide : 'Morgadour, bee stille :

3765

The Emperour,
 with some doubt,
 assented,

Toward Guy thou hast euyl wille.

He ne shaft on suche message wende,

Bot for my baroñs y shaft sende.'

HIS BAROUNS tho he dud for-sende :

Ouere all his londe his sonde gan wende,

That they shuld to the Emperour come.

and assembled his
 barons

To them he seide : 'my frendes aH and some,

I shulde sende to the Sowdan,

Yf y wiste euere by wham.

With him to accorde y am in wille, [p. 102] 3775

Yf that ye woH assente thertille,

3if ani of 3ou so hardi were,
 þat to him þe message bere.
 When þemperour had seyð his resoun,
 þer nas noiþer kniȝt no baroun 3780
 þat him a word answerd þo :
 Nas þer non þe message durst do.
 ¶ A baroun of þe benche aros :
 Sir Tristor his name was.

MS. fol. 127r. a.

C. 3555.

‘S Sir emperour, vnder-stond me, 3785
 For leyer no schal ich holden be ;

Turnbull, p. 132,
l. 3399.

For ich it sigge for gret loue,
 & þine worþschipe to held aboue :
 Fif thousande siþe haue he maugre
 þat þe conseyl 3af to þe ! 3790

For he þe loueþ riȝt nouȝt
 þat in þat wille þe haþ y-brouȝt,
 þat þou to him 3elde scholdest,
 Bot¹ þou þi sonde sende woldest.

¹ þat?

No þenkestow nouȝt of þat baroun 3795

þat was of so gret renoun,
 Hou þou sendest him to ?
 Oȝain no come he neuer mo.

He þe sent þe heued wiþ-outen more,
 No durst neuer eft non com þore ; 3800
 In þe world is kniȝt non
 þat þe message durst don.

C. 3565. For arwe no sigge ich it no-wiȝt :

3if in min armes were so gret miȝt
 Also ich hadde, & as 3ong were 3805
 As ich was hennes an hundred ȝere,
 þis ich message don ich wold,
 For drede of deþ lete y nold.

Ac icham now a neld man,
 Alle mine miȝtes ben now gan ; 3810
 It is now gon mo þan fifti ȝer
 þat ich on rigge hauberk ber.

Yf any of you so hardy were,
That durste from vs our' message bere.'
Whan the Emperour had seide his reeson,
Ther was neither knyght nor baron
That oon worde him answerd,
Bot as dome men sate aH aferde.

to ask who
would take the
message.

3780

Sir Tristor

opposed

the Emperor's
proposal,

for no former
messenger
had ever returned.

He said it not
for cowardice,

Turnbull, p. 133,
l. 3425.

¹ *jich*, but the *j*
underdotted.

Ich ¹ 3ou sigge for soþe y-wis,
To lese a good man gret harm it is,
For 3if he ani sendeþ þider, 3815
His heued *him* schal comen hider.
Now ich haue mi wille y-sede ;
Now 3iue anoþer better rede.'

When Tristor hadde y-seyd þis,
Wiþ-uten ani oþer abod y-wis, 3820
þer nas nouȝt on, litel no miche,
þat durst speke sikerliche.
Gij of Warwike vp arist :

² *thus* originally,
but the *s* under-
dotted.

' Sir emperour, bi mi lord Iesu² Crist,
þis message ichil afo, 3825
& it þurch godes help do.'
Seyd þemperour, ' þat schaltow nouȝt :
þider to go haue þou no þouȝt ;

MS. fol. 127r. b.

³ MS. *ichit*

Ich it³ dede mine men to fond,
To whom ich miȝt trust in mi lond.' 3830
þan answerd Gij wel snelle,
' For soþe, sir, leten y nille,
þat ich þe message wil do,

C. 3600. To dye er ich þennes go.'
Wiþ þat he went out of þe halle. 3835
þe Gregeys siked among hem alle,
' God ! what Gij is noble baroun !

Turnbull, p. 134,
l. 3451.

Iesu, þat suffred passioun,
Saue *him* fram cumberment,
& *him* ozain bring in sauement.' 3840
Gij cam to his in in a stounde,
His felawes droupeing he founde.
' Lordinges,' he seyde, ' hou is it now ?
Almiȝti god y bi-teche 3ou.'
' Sir,' quap Herhaud, ' ich-il go 3845
Bi þine wille wiþ þe also.'
Gij answerd, ' so no schal it be.
Icham y-go : biddeþ for me.'

but to spare a
good man.

When he finished

And ther' was noon, litiȝ ne moche,
That oon worde spake sikirliche.

GUYE of Warrewik than vpryste :
'Sir Emperour, by my lorde Criste,

This message,' quoth he thoo,

3825 offered to go.

'With goddis helpe y shaft it weȝ doo.'

The Emperour seide : 'that shalt thou nought :

Thider' goo haue thou noo thought.'

Thanne answerd Guy, as y you telle :

'By god, sir, y it leue nelle,

Bot y weȝ this message doo,

To dye or y thense goo.'

With that he toke his leue of theim aȝ,

3835

And wente him forthe oute of the haȝ.

For him they bidde, knyȝt and baron,

To god, that suffred passion,

Shuld saue him fro combringe,

And him ayene sauf bringe.

3840

Guy coȝe to his ynne in a stounde,

His felawes he haȝ aȝ drowping founde.

Guy's fellows

'What, lordingis,' he seide, 'how is it nowe ?

Aȝ-mighti god y betече you.'

'Sir,' quoth heraude, 'y shaft with the goo ; [p. 103] 3845

wished to
accompany him,

For, yf thou dye, y shaft also.'

Guy answerd : 'so may it not bee.

but he would go
alone.

I shaft goo : pray thou for me.'

- He oxed his armes hastiliche,
 And men es *him* brouzt sikerliche. 3850
 Hosen of iren he haþ on drawe,
 Non better¹ nar bi þo dawe.
 In a strong hauberk he gan *him* schrede,
 Who so it wered, þe ded no þurt *him* drede.
 An helme he haþ on him don : 3855
 Better no wered neuer kniȝt non ;
 The sercle² of gold þer-on was wrouȝt,
 For half a cite no worþ it bouȝt :
 So mani stones þer-in were, 3860
 þat were of vertu swiþe dere.
 Sepþe he gert *him* wiþ a brond
 þat was y-made in eluene lond.
 His scheld about his nek he tok,
 On hors he lepe wiþ-outen stirop,
 On hond he nam a spere kerueinde, 3865
 Out of þe cite he was rideinde.
 Alle þat weren of þat cite
 For him wel sori weren he ;
 No wene þai neuer his ȝain-cominge,
 Alle þai wene þer his endinge. 3870
C. 3835. Now is Gij in þe riȝt way
 Toward þe Sarrazins, y say,
 Wele y-armed on his stede,
 A launce he bar gode at nede.
 Smerteliche he dede *him* in þe ways, 3875
 Ouer þe dounes & þe valeys
 To the Sarrazins y-comen he is,
 & her pailouns he sep y-wis.
 A real pailoun he þer seye
 Wiþ an eren of gold an heye. 3880
 þat was þe soudans³ pailoun :
 Hauē he Cristes malisoun !
 In-to þe pailoun Gij *him* wond,
 & an hast þer he fond

¹ *bertter*, but the first *r* underdotted.

² the *r* added over the line.

Turnbull, p. 135, l. 3477.

MS. fol. 127v. a.

³ *soudanes*, but the *e* underdotted.

His armes he asked hastely,
And men theim broughte gentilly.

3850

He armed himself,

Than he girde him with his bronde,
That was made in eluyssh londe.
A sheelde aboute his swere he toke,
To horse he leepe withoute stirope,
In his hande he bare his spere keruyng,
And oute of the Citee he wente ryding.
All the folke of the Citee
For him wepte for pitee,
And preyde hertly for his gayne-comyng,
And that the sowdan shuld haue euyl ending.

3865

leapt on his horse,

and left the city,

amid universal
lamentation.

3870

Nowe is Guy in the wey
Towardis the sarasyns, as y you sey,
Well armed vpon his stede,
A launce he bare full good at nede.

So nyghe the sarasyns come he is,
That he their' paulyon sawe y-wis.
To the Sowdañs paulyon he gan aspie
With an heron of golde standing on highe.

3880

By a golden eagle
he knew the
Soudan's pavilion.

In-to that paulyon Guy is went
On horsebak, y telle you, verament.

- Alle atte mete þat þer was, 3885
 & nouȝt michel noise þer nas.
 At þe heye bord eten kinges ten,
 þat alle were Gyes fomen.
 Þan seyð Gij þe Englisse,
 'Vnderstond to mi speche : 3890
 þilke lord þat woneþ an heye,
 þat al þing walt fer & neye,
 & in þe rode lete him pini,
 Al cristen men to sauī,¹
 & in þe se made þe sturioun, 3895
 So ȝif ȝou alle his malisoun,
 & alle þilk þat ich here se,
 þat mis-bileued men be ;
 & þe at þe first, sir soudan,
 Cristes wreche þe come opan ! 3900
 Yuel fure breninde fast þe opon,
 & cleue þi brest doun to þi ton !
 For icham Gij ȝe mow wel² se,
 Yuel mot ȝe alle y-the !
 Vnder-stond, treitour, mi resoun : 3905
 Haue þou Cristes malisoun,
 & alle þilke forþ mitt te,
 þat ich her³ about þe se.
 þe heye god þat is ful of miȝt
 Binim ȝou ȝour limes & ȝour siȝt ! 3910
 Bi me þe sent word þemperour Garioun,
C. 3660. þat miȝti men haþ in his bandoun,
 þurch wham þou art y-brouȝt to schond,
 & hoteþ þe wende out of his lond,
 For here has tow no riȝt. 3915
 Finde a Sarrazin oþer a kniȝt,
 & he schal anoþer finde,
 þat schal deray[ne] his riȝt kinde.
 Y schal wiþ þe glotoun fiȝt ;
 & ȝif þine haue þe more miȝt, 3920

Turnbull, p. 136,
l. 3508.

¹ *sauēi*, but the *e*
underdotted.

² *ȝ* added over the
line with another
ink.

³ *r* added over the
line (with another
ink?).

MS. fol. 127v. b.
Turnbull, p. 137,
l. 3529.









